DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 280 308 FL 016 573

AUTHOR	Sobelman, Chih-ping Chang; And Others
TITLE	Studies of Chinese Language Structures.
SPONS AGENCY	Department of Education, Washington, DC.
PUB DATE	Dec 82
NOTE	369p.; Document contains small type.
PUB TYPE	Reports - Descriptive (141) -- Guides - Classroom Use - Guides (For Teachers) (052)
EDRS PRICE	MF01/PC15 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS	*Chinese; Deep Structure; Discourse Analysis; Form Classes (Languages); *Grammar; *Language Patterns; *Language Usage; *Morphology (Languages); Phrase Structure; Second Language Instruction; Structural Analysis (Linguistics); Surface Structure; Syntax; Uncommonly Taught Languages

ABSTRACT

Fifty-five structures of the Chinese language are described and their particular usage patterns are discussed for the use of teachers, linguists, and advanced students of Chinese. Each structure is listed by its major structural element(s), its grammatical element(s), or a combination of the two. The examination of each structure consists of an analysis of the form (formal features and/or variant forms), examples in Chinese with the English translation, and notes on usage (formal properties, behavior, and meaning). In some cases, structures are contrasted for clarification. (MSE)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

ED289303

STUDIES OF CHINESE LANGUAGE STRUCTURES

by

Chih-ping Chang Sobelman, and others

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS
MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY

C. Linder

TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES
INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)."

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
Office of Educational Research and Improvement
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION
CENTER (ERIC)

☑ This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it

☐ Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality

- Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official OERI position or policy

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

FL 016573

STUDIES OF CHINESE LANGUAGE STRUCTURES

By

Chih-ping Chang Sobelman

With Mrs. Chih-yu Chang Ho
Mr. Charles Hamond
Mr. Paul Mandel

This work was completed under a research grant from the United States Department of Education during 1977-1978 and 1978-1979 and is published with the permission of the same.

Printed by
Beijing, China
December, 1982

Table of Contents

FORWARD by John DeFrancis 1
INTRODUCTION 3
PREFACE 5
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS 10

THE STUDEY OF CHINESE LANGUAGE STRUCTURES

1. THE USAGE OF Adverb - Noun Phrase 11
2. THE USAGE OF ai VP^1 bu VP^1 16
3. THE USAGE OF X ba, Y 24
4. THE USAGE OF bu (VP) le 32
5. THE USAGE OF bu VP^1 ye dei VP^1 35
6. THE USAGE OF NP^1 bu NP^1 42
7. THE USAGE OF VP/S bu? 49
8. THE USAGE OF cai Aux VP/SVP ne 51
9. THE USAGE OF cai EVP/FVP ne 54
10. THE USAGE OF NP chuwai 58
11. THE USAGE OF NP dao: "...." 63
12. THE USAGE OF V N/Pron de N 68
13. THE USAGE OF Topic dou Comment? 75
14. THE USAGE OF Topic dou Vomment le 81
15. THE USAGE OF ge 89
16. THE USAGE OF V ge X 95
17. THE USAGE OF gei Pron lai ge VP/S 100
18. THE USAGE OF gei VP 106
19. THE USAGE OF Pron^1 gei Pron^2 VP 112
20. THE USAGE OF hao VP 119
21. THE USAGE OF VP/S haole 126

22. THE USAGE OF *jian* X *jiu* Y 132

23. THE USAGE OF Aux VP^{1} *jiu* VP^{1} 138

24. THE USAGE OF QW Phrase^{1} *jiu* QW Phrase^{1} 143

25. THE USAGE OF VP^{1} *jiu* VP^{1} *de* *shi* X 148

26. THE USAGE OF X *jiushi* Y 154

27. THE USAGE OF *lai* 164

28. THE USAGE OF *lai*, S 174

29. THE USAGE OF V-*lai*/*qu*/*zou* 182

30. THE USAGE OF V-*laizhe* 189

31. THE USAGE OF SV-*le* *qu* *le* 195

32. THE USAGE OF *lian* NP^{1} *dai* NP^{2} 198

33. THE USAGE OF *lian* SV^{1} *dai* SV^{2} 203

34. THE USAGE OF *lian* X *dai* Y 209

35. THE USAGE OF S-ma./! 215

36. THE USAGE OF *man* N^{1} *shi* N^{2} 223

37. THE USAGE OF NU SV M N 227

38. THE USAGE OF *qie* VP *ne* 235

39. THE USAGE OF V-*shang*-*qian*-*lai*/*shang*-*qian*-*qu* 240

40. THE USAGE OF *shi*-*bu*-*shi* 246

41. THE USAGE OF *wo* *shuo* VP/S 253

42. THE USAGE OF VP^{1} *ye* *bai* VP^{1} 258

43. THE USAGE OF *yi* M^{1} M^{1} 266

44. THE USAGE OF *yi* N V 271

45. THE USAGE OF *yi* V NU M 275

46. THE USAGE OF VP *yong*/*shi* *de* N 278

47. THE USAGE OF *you* Aux VP/FVP *le* 281

48. THE USAGE OF *you* SVP *le* 285

49. THE USAGE OF *youde* VP/S 288

50. THE USAGE OF *youdeshi* 294

51. THE USAGE OF *youxie* 304

52. THE USAGE OF *zai* *ye* Neg VP *le* 314

53. THE USAGE OF X *zeyi*, Y 318

54. THE USAGE OF V^1-zhe V^1-zhe 327

55. THE USAGE OF X *zhiyu*, Y 331

INDEX :

In order of occurrence in the text. 335

In alphabetical order. 342

Forword

The present work is of special significance in at least two respects: (1) It is a useful contribution to coping with problems of Chinese usage that have not been adequately handled elsewhere. (2) It is an exemplary demonstration of the added contribution that language teachers can make in utilizing their classroom expertise to produce practical study aids of high quality.

As a contribution to coping with problems of Chinese usage, the present work helps to fill the big gap between textbook presentations and full-scale grammars. Textbooks tend to limit their discussions of usage to ad hoc explanations or to only slightly more generalized analyses geared to a particular student level. Grammars tend to be ponderous tomes so overwhelming in their specialized terminology and exhaustive treatment as to frighten away many students and teachers who might otherwise benefit from them.

Ms. Sobelman has chosen to aim her work at a target lying between the extremes just mentioned. The patterns presented are limited in number but have been treated with judicious thoroughness, without excessive jargon but in a coherent and lucid fashion. Students and teachers alike will find the material useful and informative. It can be approached either as a reference work, that is as a source of information on specific structures that have caused trouble and have brought about a need for further elucidation, or as a supplementary study aid into which one might dip at random for the pleasure of expanding one's knowledge by the many-faceted insights presented therein.

There is added significance in this work in the fact that it is the product of a person who is primarily a language teacher. While extensive contributions to Chinese language teaching have been made by armchair strategists with sometimes limited battle experience in the classroom, the enormous potential contribution of classroom veterans has been inadequately realized. Ms. Sobelman has drawn on her extensive teaching experience, added to it some knowledge of how linguistic science can help make greater sense of this experience, and produced a work of genuine synthesis.

Concretely, the author has taken note of specific student difficulties and mistakes in her classroom; checked textbooks, grammars, and other sources as to whether they treat these problems, and if so how; collected samples of the problem patterns from other native speakers; considered the pattern from various aspects; written out a tentative exposition of the pattern; tried out the material on students and colleagues; and finally returned to the drawing board for further reworking of the material into the present form.

We have here, then, not only a useful contribution to our knowledge of Chinese linguistic structures. We have also an equally useful demonstration of the added role that can be played by language teachers. Ms Sobelman's work shows that you don't have to be a Ph.D. to produce a creditable publication in the area of Chinese language teaching. It is hoped that other language teachers will take heart despite their unfortunately low position on the academic totem pole and will also draw on their classroom experience to add to our store of useful aids for the study of Chinese.

John DeFrancis

Introduction

In writing this book, the author has not attempted to compile just another collection of supplementary materials, reference book or textbook on the Chinese language. Instead, it should be considered as a combination of the three.

On the one hand, as a collection of supplementary materials, this work will be quite valuable to students for facilitating the comprehension of complex grammatical patterns not adequately analyzed in the average Chinese language text. On the other hand, as a reference book, this study will provide the reader with a convenient tool for finding the meaning, grasping the function and understanding the underlying significance and principles of the patterns. Finally, as a textbook, this work will be useful to advanced Chinese students and linguists.

In this way, the author intends to reach a varied audience including teachers, students and linguists of Chinese. Teachers will find this book most useful because it is a compilation of patterns containing copious explanations and numerous examples. This will simplify the teacher's task in the presentation of grammatical complexities. Students will make good use of this book, despite the fact that there are no exercises, by utilizing it to improve upon their basic grasp of the language. Linguists will find this work most interesting, despite the fact that the terminology has been simplified, since the author has analyzed many significant patterns which have heretofore been neglected. To have rigidly followed linguistic convention would have made this book too unwieldy for the average student or teacher. Instead, while maintaining linguistic methodology as a matter of prime concern, the author has written a work accessible to all.

Furthermore, the author has not confined herself to a single linguistic approach. Rather, she combines the three major types of procedures: structural, transformational and semantic. Briefly, the structural method is an analysis of linguistic data based on form (word order, particles, etc.). The transformational style shows the relationship between a given and its underlying pattern. The semantic approach focuses on the content rather than the form by comparing the meanings of linguistic elements in different contexts. The combined use of these three methods is well suited to the author's goal of effectively presenting her findings in a readily understandable manner.

Thus, the author has compiled a multi-purpose work designed to meet the needs of the teacher, student and linguist. In order to satisfy such a wide range of requirements, she has analyzed a large variety of patterns ranging from those which are highly significant and yet have been neglected in other texts to those which seem extremely simple. However, this apparent simplicity belies the fact that they are fundamental to one's understanding of the workings of the language. Hence, by focusing on what seems to be simple, the reader will be able to internalize the principles of the language rather than merely treating each case as a new vocabulary item. Therefore, by meeting various purposes and communicating with a widespread audience, the author hopes to highlight the joy of studying, teaching and analyzing Chinese.

Charles Hammond
Chih-yu Ho
Paul Mandel

Preface

Organization. There are fifty-five (55) structures presented in this work. Each structure is listed by its major structural element(s): either by its Chinese element alone as in "THE USAGE OF ge"; its grammatical element(s) as in "THE USAGE OF NU M SV N"; or the combination of both as in "THE USAGE OF NP^1 bu NP^1". The order of presentation of these structures is by alphabetical arrangement of the first Chinese element or the first grammatical element, whichever case may apply. For instance: the study of the usage of Adverb - Noun Phrase proceeds that of ai VP^1 bu VP^1, the usage of yi M^1 M^1 proceeds that of yi V NU M, and the usage of youdeshi proceeds that of youxie.

Presentation. The study of each structure consists of the following sections:

I. Form
II. Examples
III. Notes

This format of presentation is designed to correspond to that of "Structure Notes for Read About China " - a previously published work of the author - which has been favorably received by its users. Section I: Form lists all the formal features and/or the variant forms of a structure being studied. Section II: Examples lists all examples illustrating the form or forms as presented in Section I. The examples are given in both Chinese and their English translations. Section III: Notes presents the study of the formal properties, behavior and meaning of the structure being examined. Whenever necessary, contrastive study is included to distinquish the structure in question from others.

Index. Following the entries as described above, there are two indexes. The first is an index of all entries listed in order of occurrence in the text. For instance:

20. hao VP
cai neng VP
lai/qu VP lai/qu
weideshi .... cai ....

This means that the study of the usage of 'hao VP' is the twentieth entry in the present work and in its presentation there are three other structures included for comparison and differentiation, i.e. 'cai neng VP', 'lai/qu VP lai/qu' and 'weideshi .... cai ....'

The second index provides cross references for all structures covered in this work alphabetically. For instance:

hao	
hao VP	20
hao, S	28
hao bu hao	40

This indicates that the word 'hao' occurred in three different entries of this structural study: in entry number 20 as in 'hao VP', in entry number 38 as in 'hao, S' and in entry number 40 as in 'hao bu hao'.

Pron	
V N/Pron de N	12
Pron de N	15
gei Pron lai ge VP/S	17
gei Pron V NU M NP	17
Pron-xie	51

This indicates that 'Pron' occurred in this work many times in varied contexts. In entry number 12, it occurs in the context of 'V N/Pron de N', in number 15 in the context of 'Pron de N', in 17 in the contexts of 'gei Pron lai ge VP/S' and 'gei Pron V NU M NP' and in number 51 in the context of 'Pron-xie' .

Explanation of Grammatical Terms. A few grammatical terms are used in this work to facilitate the analysis of these structures. These terms are used for the purpose of teaching Chinese to non-native speakers whoes interests are learning the language rather than theoretical research.[1]

---

[1] For a full discussion of these terms please refer to the Preface in "Structure Notes for Read About China" by Sobelman Ho. Far Eastern Publications. New Haven, Conn. Pp iv - viii.

ADV	Adverb
Aux V(P)	Auxiliary Verb(Phrase)
C	Comment of a Topic-Comment Construction
CO-VP	Co-verbial Phrase
DO	Direct Object
EV(P)	Equative Verb(Phrase)
FV(P)	Functive Verb(Phrase)
IO	Indirect Object
LV(P)	Locative Verb(Phrase)
M	Measure
MA	Movable Adverb
N	Noun
Neg	Negative Marker
NP	Noun Phrase
NU	Numerals
O	Object
Pron	Pronoun
PW	Place Word
Q	Question Construction
QW	Question Word
RE	Resultative Ending
S	Sentence - a complete T-C Construction
Sp	Specifier
SV(P)	Stative Verb(Phrase)
T	Topic
T - C	Topic - Comment Construction
TW	Time Word
V	Verb
VP	Verb Phrase
X, Y	Variables

Explanation of Symbols. A few symbols are used to facilitate the discussion and presentation in this work. They are explained in the following text:

/	A virgule sign is used to separate alternatives. na lai/qu means na lai or na qu

( )	When used in the presentation of formal structural elements, it encloses the optional element(s). For instance: bu (VP) le means the VP is optional. Or, it inidcates an element is omitted. bu chi le → bu( ) le = bu le
→ ←	It indicates a transformational, conversional or derivational relationship between the two elements (or groups of elements). In the following example, A is transformed to B, and C is transformed from D. A → B C ← D
←→	It indicates an interchangeable relationship between the two elements (or groups of elements). In the example below, A is interchangeable with B. A ←→ B
=	The equal sign indicates that two elements (or groups of elements) are identical, either by their own rights in a certain usage, as in: hao = keyi hao ni lai ba! keyi ni lai ba! Or, as a result of a transformation, as in: bu chi le → bu ( ) le = bu le
[ ]	The brackets are used to enclose a crude translation or a decoding of a Chinese sentence into English.
*	An asterisk at the beginning of a construction of a string of words indicates that that construction or that string of words is not acceptable utterance in Chinese.

°	An empty circle is used at the beginning of a sentence or a construction to indicate that that sentence or construction is not acceptable or not applicable to the current discussion, though it might otherwise be a normal expression in Chinese.
+	A plus sign indicates an affirmative VP.
-	A minus sign indicates a negativeVP.
±	A combination of plus and minus signs indicate the VP in question may either be affirmative or negative.
NA	It is an abbreviation for Not Acceptable or Not Applicable.

Acknowledgments

To all my students hwo have provided me with stimulating thoughts and probing questions in search for better understanding of the Chinese language, and with enormous collection of learning difficulties which crystalized the profound complexity of languages in contact, I would like to dedicate the present work.

To Dr. John DeFrancis whoes dedication of his life long career to the teaching of Chinese language has become the single most imprtant inspiration to people like myself in the profession; and, whoes generously shown confidence in me has become a lasting guiding force in the making of my own career in the same profession, I wish to express my profound respect and gratitute.

To the Department of Education, Washington, D. C. - its staff and members of its Review Board - whoes research grant allowed me to complete the present study;

To Rita Chow, my former classmate, who provided me with abundent samples of Chinese expressions drawn from her ardent love for literature and from her richly endowed life-style;

To Charles Hammond and Paul MAndel, two former students and trusted friends, who offered me not only their editorial talents but most importantlv their relentless and unbiased criticism;

To C. J. S. and H. J. of Beijing and G. Q. J of Shanghai, through their efforts this work is published in the present form;

And to my sister, Mrs. C. Y. Ho, who has become my indispensable partner in all ventures, I wish to extend my sincere appreciation.

C. P. S.

Pound Rige, N.Y.
September, 1982

1 The Usage of Adverb-Noun Phrase 名词——副词组

I. Form:

Adverb - Noun Phrase

II. Examples:

A. 就戏迷一个人在哪坐着呢！
Only the opera buff is still sitting there!

B. 光歌舞弹唱的老师傅就请了好几位。
(Of the masters of song and dance alone, we invited quite a few.) We invited quite a few of the masters of song and dance alone.

III. Notes:

A.1. Generally, adverbs do not occur directly before a noun or noun phrase. However, movable adverbs, usually double syllable adverbs, may be used before a NP topic of a Topic-Comment construction. For instance:

(1) 确实这个比那个好。
This one is truly better than that one.

(2) 偏偏他不在家。
Unfortunately he was not home.

Thus, the MA appears to be a case of Adv-N but in function it is really modifying the entire Topic-Comment construction.

A.2. It is also acceptable for adverbs, single or double syllable, to occur before a Nu-M-(N) construction, whether the Nu-M-(N) is serving as a comment in a Topic-Comment construction or not. For instance:

(3) 他才三岁。
He is only three years old. (Topic-Comment construction)

(4) 这儿只五本书。
Only five books here. (T-C construction)

(5) 这儿恰好五把椅子。
There are just five chairs. (T-C construction)

(6) 正好两个月。
Just two months. (Topicless construction)

(7) 已经七年了。 Already seven years. (Topicless construction)

A.3. In contrast, the usage to be examined here is that of single syllable adverbs, which are normally called 'fixed adverbs' and which occur before a noun or a NP: a phencmenon which appears to be in violation of the rules concerning usage of adverbs.

B.1. Following is a list of examples in which this special word order, Adverb-Noun, occurs.

(8) 就场长没走。 Only the manager of this factory did not leave.

(9) 别人的话你都信，独我的话你不信。 You believe everybody else, but not me.

(10) 偏他不爱念书。 He alone is not fond of studying.

(11) 只王二做事挣钱。 Only Wang Er works to earn a living.

(12) 光机票就二百块。 The airline ticket alone costs $200.

(13) 仅你一个人吃也不够。 There won't be enough for your consumption alone!

(14) 另李王二家也捐助了一些。 In addition, the Lees and the Wangs also donated some.

(15) 岸上净杂草。 On the shore, there are only wild plants.

(16) 又鱼又肉，我们大吃一顿。 We heartily ate both fish and meat.

B.2. These occurrences include the following categories of adverb functions:

a. Modification of the following N/NP only:

(17) 就菊花也不好看，得有别的配衬。 Chrysanthemums alone will not look good either. There should be some other things.

b. Modification of the following NP-VP or Topic-Comment construction:

(18) 单老王表演功夫不够还得有别的节目。	We need other activities besides Lao Wang's demonstration of gongfu.

c. Modification of the following NP comment of Topic-Comment construction:

(19) "这儿就桌子椅子。" "那不够。"	There are tables and chairs only. That won't be sufficient.

D. In a disjunctive pattern:

(20) 又你的又我的一共十二件 。	Both yours and mine, there are altogether twelve items.

B.3. Looking at the phenomenon from another angle, the adverb-noun functions may be categorized in the following ways:

a. Adverb-noun in the Topic position of a Topic-Comment construction:

	TOPIC	COMMENT
(17)	就菊花	也不好看
(18)	单老王表演工夫	不够
(20)	又你的又我的	一共十二件

Here, the adverb-noun word order appears to be an exception to the general behavior of adverbs in Chinese: not only does the adverb occur before a noun, but it is before the topic.

b. Adverb-noun in the Comment position of a Topic-Comment construction:

	TOPIC	COMMENT
(15)	岸上	净杂草
(19)	这儿	就桌子椅子

Here, the adverb is occurring before a Comment and it appears to be in the normal usage. However, the Comment is unusual in that it is a NP.

In the former case (a), the adverb may be omitted and the remaining structure is still an acceptable sentence. In the latter case (b), if the adverb is omitted, the remaining structure will not be an acceptable sentence. Thus in the former case these adverbs are functioning as adverbs, while in the latter case the adverbs are functioning as main verbs.

B.4. Whichever function they may have or wherever they occur in a T-C construction, they may all be considered to be derived forms from related movable adverbs. For instance, all such adverbs may be converted to a two-syllable adverb without affecting the meaning of the original sentence.

(8) 就场长没走 ⟷ 就是/就有场长没走

(9) ……独我的话不听 ⟷ ……独有/维独我的话不听

(10) 偏他不爱念书 ⟷ 偏偏/偏是他不爱念书

(11) 只王二作事挣钱 ⟷ 只是/只有王二作事挣钱

(12) 光机票就二百块 ⟷ 光是机票就二百块

(13) 仅你一个人吃…… ⟷ 仅仅/仅是/仅有你一个人吃……

(14) 另李王二家也…… ⟷ 另外/另有李王二家也……

(15) 岸上净杂草 ⟷ 岸上净是杂草

(16) 又鱼又肉的…… ⟷ 又是/又有鱼又是/又有肉……

(17) 就菊花也…… ⟷ 就是/就有菊花也……

(18) 单老王表演…… ⟷ 单单/单是/单有老王表演……

(19) 这儿就桌子椅子…… ⟷ 这儿就有/就是桌子椅子……

(20) 又你的又我的…… ⟷ 又是你的又是我的……

B.5. It must be noted that though a two-syllable adverb may be abbreviated, the number of adverbs which may be so abbreviated is restricted. In addition to those used in the above illustrations, there are the following:

(21)a 可你得小心。	However, you should be careful.
(21)b 或你或他一个去就可以了。	Either you or he, one person needs to go.
(21)c 亦文亦武他二者兼得。	Both Wen and Wu, he has qualifications in both.
(21)d 枉小王白跑了一趟。	Xiao Wang made the trip in vain.
(21)e 惟炒菜很受欢迎。	Only stir-fried dishes are popular.
(21)f 徒天河明朗。	Vainly the Milky Way shines brightly.
(21)g 实我政府之功绩。	Truly it is the achievement of our government.
(21)h 竟老少皆知。	Unexpectedly both old and young are well-informed.
(21)i 都哪有卖的?	Where are the places selling this? (see pattern 都)

2 The Usage of ai VP^1 bu VP^1 爱 VP^1 不 VP^1

I. Forms:

A. ai VP^1 bu VP^1

B. ai VP^1 bu VP^1 de X

II. Examples:

A.1.	你爱吃不吃就是这个！	Whether you like to eat it or not, this is it!
A.2.	爱调查不调查反正我不管。	Whether you investigate it or not, I do not care; anyway, it is not my business!
A.3.	爱吃药不吃药死了别怪我。	Whether you take the medication or not, if you die, don't blame me!
A.4.	这份工作他们爱作不作你何必着急。	Whether or not they take this assignment, must you be so worried!
A.5.	你爱把书送去不送去。	Return this book or not. It's up to you.
B.1.	把饭都给他摆在桌子上了他还是 爱吃不吃的一副讨厌像。	I even get all the food on the table for him. (He still shows a disgusting air of wanting to eat yet at the same time not wanting to eat.) He still disgusts me with his indecisiveness.
B.2.	他拿着一本杂志爱看不看的翻着。	He has a magazine in his hand and is (thumbing through the pages as if he wants to read it, yet at the same time not wanting to read it) thumbing through the pages half-heartedly.
B.3.	戏票都买好了，他却爱去不去的 躲在哪不动。	I bought the tickets for the show already, (but he is still sitting there

not moving as if he wants to go yet at the same time not wanting to go) but he is still sitting there like a bump on a log as if he can't make up his mind to go or not.

B.4. 我请他明天吃饭他却爱来不来的蘑菇着还没回话儿！

I invited him to come for dinner tomorrow (he is still undecided--wanting to come yet at the same time not wanting to come--and has not anwered me) but he is still undecided whether to come or not, and has not yet sent me his reply.

III. Notes:

A.1. Briefly, the meaning of ai VP^1 bu VP^1 in Form A is "whether (one) does VP^1 or not is no one else's concern" or "whether or not (one) does VP^1 or not, the speaker is indifferent." The meaning of this structure in Form B is 'half-heartedly,' 'hesitantly,' 'indecisively,' etc.

A.2. When used alone, Form B expresses the subject's contradictory behavior. When used as a modifier, it expresses indecisiveness, hesitation, half-heartedness, etc.

B.1. Form A is a contracted form of a complex sentence structure:

Aux VP^1 jiu VP^1, bu Aux VP^1 jiu bu VP^1

The Aux verb must be ai (爱), and in both parts of the complex sentence the verb phrases are identical. For example:

(1) Basic Structure: 爱吃就吃，不爱吃就不吃

爱吃(　　)(　　)不吃

Resulting: 爱吃不吃 (correct)

(2) Basic Structure: 想吃就吃，不想吃就不吃

想吃（　）（　）不吃

Resulting: * 想吃不吃 NA

(3) Basic Structure: 可以吃就吃不可以吃就不吃

可以吃（　）（　）不吃

Resulting: * 可以吃不吃 NA

B.2. Though the contracted form contains an affirmative VP and a negative VP, it is not to be confused with the affirmative-negative question constructions, such as yao buyao (要不要), qu bu qu (去不去), chi bu chi (吃不吃), etc. ai VP^1 bu VP^1 is never itself a question construction.

B.3. In Form A, the VP^1 may be any of the following:

Single syllable verb, as in II-A-1, II-B.1-4.

Bisyllable verb, as in II-A.2.

Simple verb, as in II-A-1-2, II-A-4, II-B-1-4

Complex verb, as in II-A-3

Verb phrase, as in II-A-3.

The restriction is that only action verbs are to be used.

B.4. If the VP is a phrase built around a complex verb, it may be stated in the following way for clarity and economy:

a. Omitting the object:

(4) 爱做饭不做饭 whether you cook or not

爱做饭不做( )

(5) 爱交功课不交功课 whether you hand in your homework or not

爱交功课不交( )

b. Omitting the CO-VP:

(6) 爱替我买不替我买 whether you buy it on my behalf or not

爱替我买不(   )买

(7) 爱把书送去不把书送去 whether you deliver this book or not

爱把书送去不( )送去

c. Pre-stating the object:

(8) 你爱交功课不交功课 (same as (4))

功课你爱交不交

(9) 爱把书送去不把书送去 (same as (7))

书爱送去不送去

B.5. The structure ai VP^1 bu VP^1 may be used in the following ways:

a. As a Comment in a Topic-Comment construction:

(10) 我所知道的都告诉你了 I have told you everything I know, believe it or not.

你爱信不信。

(11) 条件都说清楚了 All conditions are clearly stated. It is up to the delegation to accept them or reject them.

代表团爱接受不接受。

b. As the first component in a compound sentence:

	COMPONENT I	COMPONENT II	
(12)	你爱干不干	我不管	Whether you work or not, I do not care!
(13)	他爱去不去	你何必着急	Whether he goes or not, why worry! It is his own doing.

B.6. As a comment, ai VP^1 bu VP^1 may have the sentence particle le (了) as in yaokan...le, but without yaokan. 要看

(14) 要看你爱看不看。	Read it or don't read it (whatever suits you).
(15) 你爱看不看了。	It depends on whether you want to read it or not.
(16) 我都告诉你了你爱信不信了。	I told you everything already. Believe it or not it is up to you now.
(17) 话已经说尽了你爱听不听了。	I have said everything (I could have said); take it or leave it, it is up to you now.

C.1. Form B is a contracted form of a different compound sentence structure: Aux VP^1 keshi/er/que bu VP.

In this structure the Aux VP is either ai VP or any other Aux verbs. The VPs must be identical, and the adverb keshi (可是) or er (而) or que (却), etc., meaning 'on the contrary.' For instance:

(18) 爱看可是不看	like to read, but will not read
爱看( )不看	(correct)
爱看不看	

(19) 想来可是不来	is thinking of coming, but will not come
想来（ ）不来	
想来不来	(correct)
(20) 能作 可是 不作	is capable of doing it, but will not do it
能作（ ）不作	
能作不作	(correct)
(21) 能作可是不干	
能作（ ）不干	
* 能作不干	NA

C.2. Although Form B also has an affirmative-negative VP structure, Form B, like Form A, is not an affirmative-negative question construction.

C.3. The VP in Form B may be a single syllable verb or a bisyllabic simple verb. For example:

(22) 他爱理不理的哼了一声。	He responded "hum!" half-heartedly.
(23) 他爱搭理不搭理的讨厌像。	[He shows a disgusting attitude of wanting to respond and half not wanting to respond.] He has an annoying attitude of disinterest.

C.4. The contracted form of Form B may be used to modify either a NP (24) or a VP (25) or may be an independent comment in a T-C construction (26) and (27).

(24) 爱要不要的姿态真讨厌。	His half-hearted acceptance is annoying.
(25) 要就不就的推推让让到现在还没决定。	He has been undecided about accepting the assignment and up to now has not made any decision.

(26) 他会喝不喝，你不会喝却喝起来没完。

He knows how to drink, but will not (you don't know how to drink, yet have been drinking endlessly).

(27) 他想去不去谁也管不了他。

He desires to go, but will not go. No one can interfere with his decision.

D. Form A and Form B compared.

D.1. In the minimal context, the distinction between Form A and Form B of ai VP^1 bu VP^1 is difficult to detect:

(28) 你爱去不去。

Whether you go or not (see if I care!).

or: You would like to go (I know) yet you aren't going to go.

However, when this structure is followed by another sentence which functions either to supplement or to complement ai VP^1 bu VP^1, the meaning becomes clear.

(29) 你爱去不去我不管! Form A

(30) 你爱去不去自找倒霉! Form B

D.2. In a minimal context these two forms may sometimes be distinguished in the following ways:

By different stress pattern: In Form A the primary stress is on ai (爱); in Form B the primary stress is on both ai (爱) and bu (不).

By the presence or absence of a pause in either two VPs: In Form A there is no pause between ai VP and bu VP. In Form B there may be a pause separating the ai VP from bu VP.

By the varied ways in which the forms are used: Form A may not be a modifier; Form B may modify another element.

(31) 他爱来不来。

(32) 他爱来不来的样子。

E. Form A compared with wulur (无论) etc. and suibien (随便).
Form A ai VP bu VP is a self-sufficient statement, therefore it may be used alone. wulun/etc. question construction is a dependent clause, and must be followed with a statement to the effect that 'it does not matter.'
Form A ai VP bu VP may be followed by suibien as reinforcement.
suibien may be used alone or followed by a statement of alternatives, but it is not restricted to a choice of two as in ai VP bu VP.

(31) 你爱来不来随你便。	Whether you come or not, do as you please.
(32) 随你便。	Do as you please.
(33) 你爱来不来与我无关。	Whether you come or not, I am not concerned! (correct)
• 无论你来不来/无论你来	NA
(34) 你随便怎么写我不管。	Write whichever way you please, I am not concerned! (correct)

3 The Usage of X ba, Y X 吧，Y

I. Forms:

A. X ba, Y

B. X^1 ba, Y^1 X^2 ba, Y^2

II. Examples:

A.1.	就说爱吧， 在阶级社会里也有阶级的爱。	Take for example "Love" in a society of classes. There would only be love within classes.
A.2.	就算你事先不知道吧， 你为什么不早打听一下呢？	Supposing that you did not have any knowledge beforehand, why didn't you make inquiries sooner?
B.1.	事情吧，他找不到；学校吧， 他又进不去！	(If you consider) employment, he cannot find any; (if you consider) schools, he cannot get into one either.
B.2.	新的汽车吧，他买不起； 旧的汽车吧，他又不要。	As for a new car, he can't afford it, as for an old car, he does not care to have one.

III. Notes:

A. The special usage of ba (吧) to be examined here may be considered as an "indicator" or "marker" of supposition. ba is suffixed either to a single supposition or to multiple suppositions stated in a series.

B.1. Form A is a Topic-Comment construction in which ba is suffixed to the topic, and is a topic marker:

TOPIC	COMMENT
X, ba,	Y.
X ba,	Y?

B.2. Form A is a statement of supposition, in which the Topic presents the supposition, and the Comment offers the remarks on the supposition, or states the consequence of it.

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
	(Supposition) ba	(Remarks or consequence)	
(1)	现在训练吧，	得多少人力物力时间！	If we train teachers now, how much is the cost in terms of time, money, and manpower?
(2)	你把差事做完了吧，	是不是拿到钱很难说。	Suppose you have the job completed, it is difficult to say whether or not you can get paid.
(3)	既是中国东西吧，	也卖不出好价钱。	Even for a Chinese product , it is hard to sell for a good price.
(4)	就说这本书的内容吧，	组织不错文笔不行。	Just considering the contents of this book, its organization is fair but the style of writing is poor.
(5)	就拿你来说吧，	在这种情形下会去吗?	For instance, under these circumstances, would you have gone?

B.3. There are many expressions that are used to introduce a supposition in Chinese:

a. 以……来说吧

b. 以……来看吧

c. 拿……来讲吧

d. 凭……来看吧

e. 凭……来想吧

f. 按……来看吧

g. 就是……吧

h. 即或……吧

i. 就算……吧

j. 就说……吧

k. 要是……吧

l. 如果……吧

m. 假如……吧

n. 若是……吧

Nos. a-f may be used with NPs, and adverbs such as jiu (就), zhi (只), gong (光), and dan (单) may be used before yi (以). Nos. g-n may be used with VPs or T-C constructions. The indicator of supposition ba may be used with each of them.

B.4. The variable X in X...ba may be a VP (as in (1) and (3)), or a T-C construction (as in (2)). When the variable X is a N or NP, it is generally preceded by supposition introducers such as the following: jiaru (假如), ruguo (如果), or yaushi (要是).

However, in Chinese the supposition is frequently presented with no overt marker. For instance, at times neither the introducer such as jiaru or the indicator ba is overtly expressed. Thus, both introducer and indicator of supposition are optional. For example:

(II.A.2)

就算你事先不知道吧，你……

(　　)你事先不知道(　　)，你……

C.1. Form B is a compound sentence, in which the structure of Form A is repeated, either in duplicate or in triplicate.

Duplicate:

COMPONENT I	COMPONENT II
Topic^1 Comment^1	Topic^1 Comment^1
X^1 ba, Y^1;	X^2 ba, Y^2.

Examples:

(6) 你去吧，他不高兴，你不去吧，他也不高兴。	If you go, he will not be pleased; if you do not go, he will not be pleased either.
(7) 派你去吧，他不高兴，叫他来吧，他也不高兴。	If we let you go there, he is not happy; if you call him here, he is still not happy.
(8) 说话吧，怕得罪人；不说话吧，又办不了事。	If I speak, I am afraid of offending someone; if I do not speak, I will not be able to settle this matter.
(9) 你吧不能去；他吧不肯去。	[In your case, you cannot go; in his case, he refuses to go.] You cannot go; he will not go.
(10) 丈夫吧，找不着事；孩子吧，不要强。	[As for the husband, (he) cannot find any job; as for (my) child, (he) is good for nothing.] (My) husband has no employment; my child has no ambition.

Triplicate:

COMPONENT I	COMPONENT II	COMPONENT III
Topic^1 Comment^1	Topic^2 Comment^2	Topic^3 Comment^3
X^1 ba, Y^1;	X^2 ba, Y^2;	X^3 ba, Y^3.

Examples:

(11) 留他住吧，他不肯；送他到你哪去吧，他怕麻烦；叫他回去吧，他又不干！	Asked to stay overnight, he was unwilling; when it was suggested that he be sent to your place, he thought it would be too much trouble; asked to go home, he refused.

(12) 春假吧，太短；暑假吧，太热；寒假吧，太冷。

Spring vacation is too short;
summer vacation is too hot;
winter vacation is too cold.

C.2. In Form B, where there is more than one topic and more than one comment, the relationship between topic and comment and between topics and comments can be summarized in the following way:

a. The structural features:

X^1 ba Y^1; X^2 ba you Y^2

When X^1 is not the same as X^2, and Y^1 is not the same as Y^2, the adverb you (又) may be used before Y^2.

X^1 ba Y^1; X^2 ba ye Y^2

When X^1 and X^2 are the same, and Y^1 and Y^2 are the same, the adverb ye (也) may be used before Y^2.

b. Topics:

The variables X^1 and X^2 must maintain a contrastive relationship which offers a multiple of alternatives. This relationship may be expressed as a combination of affirmative and negative versions of the same VP as in (13) below, or contrasting elements as in (14), or completely different constructions as in (15):

(13) 这盆花搬进来吧， 没地方放；不搬进来吧，天冷一定会死。

If I bring this plant in,
there is no place to put it;
if I don't bring it in,
the cold weather will kill it.

(14) 你买吧，他不肯卖，我买吧，他也不肯卖。

(If you try to buy it, he
will refuse to sell it; if
I try to buy it, he will
also refuse to sell it.)
He won't sell it to either
you or me.

(15) 叫他到老师家去吧，他不去；请老师到家里来吧，他又不肯。 (If you ask him to go to his teacher's house, he will not do it, if you invite the teacher home, he will not allow it.) He neither follows (others' instructions to go to his teacher's home, nor will he accept the proposal of inviting the teacher over.

C. When Y^1 and Y^2 are different or in contrast with each other, adverb you (又) may be used before Y^2 as in (16) below; when Y^1 and Y^2 are the same, then adverb ye (也) may be used, as in (17). Y^1 and Y^2 may both be affirmative (18), or both be negative (19), or both affirmative and negative (16) and (17).

(16) 你去吧，他生气；你不去吧，他又不高兴。 (When you go, he becomes angry; when you do not go, he becomes unhappy.) He will be angry if you go and unhappy if you don't.

(17) 你去吧，他不愿意；你不去吧，他又催你。 When you leave, he is unhappy; when you do not leave, he urges you to go.

(18) 你去吧，他生气；你不去吧，他也生气。 (If you go, he will be angry; if you do not go, he will still be angry.) He will be mad whether you go or not.

(19) 你去吧，他不太赞成；你不去吧，他也不太赞成。 (If you leave, he will not be keen on the idea; if you stay, he will still not be keen on the idea.) Whether you go or not, he is not pleased.

D.1. Whether ba is used in Form A or in Form B, it gives a relaxed and more unsure tone. Compare the following:

i. 就算你不知道，………

ii. 就算你不知道吧，………

The tone of voice of i. is more serious than ii in mentioning 你不知道 as an assumption. Therefore i can be translated into "even if I assume that you had no knowledge of it....," while ii can be translated into "suppose we assume that you had no knowledge of it....,' or "let us for a moment assume that you had no knowledge of it."

D.2. Form A presents a single supposition and is therefore used to stress, dramatize, and focus the listener's attention on one single point or on a single issue. For instance:

(20) 他这样作是不得已，就拿你来说吧，
在那种环境中也会如此的。

There is no other way but the way he has handled it; for instance, if it were you under similar circumstances, you would have done the same.

Here postulating what ni (你) would have done in the similar situation stresses 他这样作是不得已

Form B presents two or more suppositions which are followed by two or more comments, usually to indicate a sense of frustration or hesitation.

(21) 我要吧，不好意思张嘴：我不要吧，
我用什么工具呢？不知怎么办好。

I am embarrassed to open my mouth to ask for it; yet if I do not ask for it, what tools am I going to use? I really don't know how to solve the dilemma!

D.3. In Form A and Form B, the comment may be expressed in question form.

(22) 我接受这份工作吧，我做得了吗？
我不接受吧，要什么别的工作呢？

If I accept the assignment, will I be able to carry it through? If I refuse the assignment, what other assignment could I ask for?

(23) 就说爱吧，你爱的是什么呢？

Suppose you love it, what is there to be worthy of your love?

When the comments are in question form, they may be interrogative questions or may sometimes be rhetorical questions used to provoke more and deeper thinking.

(24) 你去吧，会有什么结果呢？你不去吧，会有什么害处呢？ 这些问题都要好好的考虑过再作决定。	If you go, what result will there be? If you do not go, what bad effect will there be? All these problems should be properly considered before making decisions.

E. Comparison of ba and ne (呢)

Both ba and ne may be used to mark the statement of supposition either in Form A or in Form B.

(25) 你说爱吧，不知他爱的是谁？	You may say "love" but we don't know whom he loves.
(26) 你说爱呢，不知他爱的都是谁？	(same)
(27) 你去吧，太麻烦；你不去吧，又不行。	If you go, it is too much trouble; if you do not go, it won't do.
(28) 你去呢，太麻烦；你不去呢，又不行。	(same)

Both are optional features and serve to tone down the seriousness and harshness of the supposition.

4 The Usage of hu (VP) le! 不 (VP) 了 !

I. Form:

(NP) bu(VP) le!

II. Examples:

A. “你为什么偷东西? 我非罚你不可!”	"Why did you steal? I must punish you!"
“我不了”。	"I will not do it again."
B. “再吃点儿”	"Please have a little more."
“不了”。	"No more, thank you."

III. Notes:

A.1. In spoken language, bu VP (不) is often shortened to bu (不), when the omitted VP is understood from the context.

A.2. This usage must be distinguished from the single-word-sentence usage of bu, as in ni qu ma? (你去吗), bu, wo bu qu (不, 我不去) (see section C-1 below).

B.1. bule is abbreviated from the pattern bu VP le, which means 'no longer VP,' or 'does not VP any more.' Example II-A, wo bu le is a shortened form of wo bu tou le (我不偷了) or wo bu tou dongxi le (我不偷东西了), 'I will not steal any more,' shortened to 'I will not do it anymore.'

B.2. In abbreviating the full version, NP bu VP le, either the NP or VP or both may be omitted. For instance, in II-B, bu le is abbreviated from wo bu zai lai le (我不再来了). The full construction omits both the topic and the VP resulting in bu le ((wo) bu (zai lai) le), and the translation 'no more' is derived from 'I will not have any more.'

B.3. When both NP and VP are omitted, the form bu le is idiomatically used as a polite and cordial rejection. The cordial manner is reinforced by the tone of voice. bu le may be rendered simply as 'no, thank you,' even though xiexie (谢谢) is not used.

B.4. In declarative sentences the NP is never a second person pronoun, but in interrogative,exclamatory,and imperative sentences there may be a singular or plural second person pronoun. For instance:

(1) “你不了？”	"(Is it true that) you do not do it any more?"
(2) “你们不了？”	"(What!) You do not do it any more!"
* “你不了。”	NA

B.5. In an imperative sentence, the NP is second person pronoun but never third person.

(3) 你别了。	"Don't you do it again!"
* 他别了	NA
(4) 我不了。	I will not do it any more.
(5) 他不了。	"(I know) he does not do it any more."
(6) 他不了?	"(Is it true that) he does not do it any more?"
(7) 他不了!	"(What!) he does not do it any more!"

C.1. Compare the usage of bu as part of the full structure bu VP le and its elliptical form bu le.

Usage bu of A-2 may be either the single word sentence bu (不) or an abbreviation of bu VP.

(8) “我们都应当谢谢你，请你接受我们这个小礼物吧！”	We are all obliged to you. Please accept our present.
“不，我不能接受。”	No, I cannot accept it.
(bu=single word sentence)	
(9) “这件工作的成功都是你的力量。”	The success of this project is greatly due to your effort.
“不，不，不，大家的合作，大家的合作。”	Not at all. It's the result of our cooperation.
(bu=bu shi, bu shi, bu shi.)	
(10) “炒鸡蛋用小火行吗？”	To scramble eggs, we need low temperature, O.K.?
“不，不，不，中国炒鸡蛋用旺火。”	No, no, no, Chinese-type scrambled eggs need high temperature.
(bu=buxing)	

C.2. The tone on bu of of bu le is always dropping tone. The tone on bu of single-word-sentence may vary depending on the omitted VP.

C.3. The meaning of the expression bu le remains the same, 'no more.' The meaning of the expression bu, /S/ may vary from adamant refusal, denial, to verification of facts, from 'I absolutely refuse to VP,' 'I can't possibly do VP,' to 'I am afraid it is not so.'

5 The Usage of bu VP^1 ye dei VP^1 不 VP^1 也得 VP^1

I. Form:

bu VP^1 ye dei VP^1

II. Examples:

A.1.	你不吃也得吃。	[Not eating must eat.] You may not want to eat, but you must. You must eat, there are no two ways about it.
A.2.	他不干也得干。	Though he does not feel like doing it, he must. Even if he refuses to do it, he must do it. He must do it; there are no two ways about it.
B.1.	他不投資也得投資。	Even though he refuses to invest, he must invest. Even if he resists investing (his money), he has to do it. He must invest (his money); there are no two ways about it.
B.2.	他不接受也得接受。	He must accept it; he has no choice.
C.1.	他不想吃也得吃。	He must eat it; he has no choice.
C.2	他不肯干也得干。	Even though he is unwilling to do it, he must do it. He must do it; there are no two ways about it(or: he has no choice).
D. 1.	他不愿意投資也得投資。	Even though he is unwilling to invest (his money), he must do it. Hé must invest (his money); there are no other alternatives.
D. 2.	他不敢接受也得接受。	Even though he dares not accept it, he must.
E. 1.	他不肯也得肯。	He just has to be willing, and that's that.

III. Notes:

A. Essentially, this structure conveys the meaning of an imperative statement; i.e. in spite of the resistance or opposition of the subject or regardless of the circumstances of the subject, a certain action must take place. The topic ranges from that of friendly advice to that of an ultimatum.

B.1. There are three absolutely essential and immutable elements in this structure; bu (不), ye (也), and dei (得).

B.2. None of the following is acceptable by itself:

(1) 吃也得吃 NA

(2) 不吃也得吃 NA

不吃得吃 NA

Sentence (1) occurs only as a part of a larger structure, as shown below (3). The second part may occur independently and is the structure being examined here.

(3) 吃也得吃，不吃也得吃，非吃不可。

[If he likes to eat, then let him eat; if he does not like to eat, he still has to eat; he simply must eat!]

(He) must eat whether he likes to or not!

Sentence (2) is a contracted expression formed by omitting the Auxiliary Verb.

(4) 他不愛吃也吃。

[He does not love to eat it, yet he does eat.]

He still eats it, even if he is not crazy about it.

(5) 他不愿意吃也吃。	Even if he is unwilling to eat it, he eats it anyway.
(6) 他不能吃也吃。	He eats it, en though he is not allowed.

B.3. The VP precedes *ye dei* (也得) may be any of the following:

Simple verb: Sentences II-A-1 and II-A-2.

Complex verb:

V-O: Sentences II-B-1.

Compound V: Sentence II-B-2

V-REV: Sentences (7) and (8) below.

Auxiliary Verb: Sentence II-E-1

VPs:

Aux VP: Sentences II-C.1, II-C-2, II-D-1, and II-D-2.

Adv. CP: Sentences (9) and (10) below.

CO-VP: Sentences (11) and (12) below-

(7) 不拿出来也得拿出来

(8) 拿不出来也得拿出来

(9) 不全看也得看

(10) 不多买也得买

(11) 不坐火车也得来

(12) 不替他弄也得弄

In short, there is no restriction on the type of VP that may be used before *ye dei*.

B.4 The VP following *ye dei* must be the duplicate of the main verb in the VP before *ye dei*, but not the entire VP. For example:

(13) 你不喜欢去也得去。 Even if you do not like to go, you still have to go.

B.5. If the main verb is a Verb-Object compound, or the main verb requires an Object, then the following are possibilities:

a. VP is duplicated:

(14) 甲：“他不吃饭。” A: "He does not eat rice."

乙：“他不吃饭也得吃饭 我不替他作别饭。” B: "Even if he does not eat rice, he just has to. I am not going to prepare anything else (but rice) for him."

b. Only the verb is duplicated:

(15) 甲：“他不吃东西。” A: "H refurses to eat anything!"

乙：“他不吃东西也得吃。” B: "Even if he refuses to eat, he just has to eat!"

c. The object is transposed:

(16) 甲：“他不想接受这件事。” A: "He does not intend to accept this assignment."

乙：“这件事他不想接受 也得接受。” B: "Even though he does not intent to, he just has to accept it."

B.6. In certain situations, the change of status le (了), but not the completion le (了), may be used.

(17) 现在他一个人在海外，流离失所不想接受救济 也得接受了。 Now that he is alone and homeless in a foreign land, even if he does not wish to accept assistance, he is left with no toher choice but to accept it.

(18) 甲：“你说你不喜欢看这本书，怎么现在又看了？” A: "You said that you did not care to read this book yesterday. Why are you reading it now?"

乙：“今天教授说要考这本书，我不喜欢看也得看了。” B: "The instructor mentioned today that this book will be on the test. Even though I do not care to read it, I just have to do it."

The les(了) at the end of the sentences in both cases indicates a changed situation.

B.7. The negation marker before VP^1 is always bu (不).

(II-A-2) 不干也得干 (correct)

* 没干也得干 NA

In other words, the usage of this form is limited to 'incompletion aspect' structurally.

B.8. The bu VP^1 is a contracted form of bu Aux VP, such as the following:

	neg Aux VP	⟶	neg VP
(19)a	不想 VP		不 VP
(19)b	不能 VP		
(19)c	不愿意 VP		
(19)d	不敢 VP		
(19)e	不打算 VP		
(19)f	不喜欢 VP		
(19)g	不肯 VP		

In other words, any of these expressions can be used either in their contracted form bu VP^1 or in their uncontracted form.

B.9. The entire structure bu VP^1 ye dei VP^1 is derived from the following:

a. 就是不 Aux VP, 也得 VP

b. 纵使不 Aux VP, 也得 VP

c. 即使不 Aux VP, 也得 VP

Whatever is expressed before ye dei either is not acceptable or worthy of consideration to the speaker, or is impractical or not applicable to a certain situation. What follows ye dei either represents the ultimate instruction or request of the speaker, or represents the utmost necessity or obligation imposed by certain circumstances.

Thus the entire structure is often used to mean that something must be done, or that a certain action must be performed, despite strong opposition; it can also be expressed in the following ways:

a. 不 VP 不行

b. 非得 VP

c. 非 VP 不可

d. 一定得 VP

e. 不管 Aux VP, 不 VP, 非得/反正得 VP

For instance:

II-A-2 不干也得干

a. 不干不行

b. 非得干

c. 非干不可

d. 一定得干

e. 不管你愿意干不愿意干反正得干

B.10. Furthermore, the VP following ye dei is always dependent on the VP and precedes ye dei. When the form ye dei VP occurs alone, it has other meanings. For instance:

(21)	我也得吃。	I too have to eat.
(22)	鸡也得吃。	Even chicken has to be eaten. There is a chicken dish which still has to be eaten.
(23)	这种药也得吃。	You still have to take it, even if it is this kind of medication. You have to take this kind of medication too.
(24)	(　　)也得吃	still has to be taken/consumed

6 The Usage of NP^1 bu NP^1 NP^1 不 NP^1

I. Form:

NP^1 bu NP^1

II. Examples:

A.1. 人不人鬼不鬼是什么东西呀？	It is neither human nor monster, what is it?
A.2. 山不山水不水不知道他画的是什么？	[Mountains are not mountains, streams are not streams, do not know what it is that he painted?] Neither the mountain nor the stream is properly painted; who knows what it is that he painted!
B.1. 钱不钱的事情到不要紧。	[Matters of money or not money are unimportant.] It is not a matter of money.
B.2. 这件事与学位不学位的问题没关系。	[This matter is unrelated to the question of academic degree or no academic degree] This is unrelated to the question of having an academic degree.
C.1. 管他日本貨不日本貨，便宜就好。	[I do not care whether or not they are Japanese goods, if they are inexpensive, it will be fine.] Who cares whether it is a Japanese product or not, as long as it is inexpensive it is all right with me.
C.2. 新车不新车无所谓有车就行。	[New car or no new car, it does not matter, as long as we have a car.] It does not make any difference whether or not it is a new car, as long as we do have a car.

III. Notes:

A.1. The noun used before and after bu (不) must be the same, and may be any of the following:

Single syllable	Sentences II-A-1 and A-2.
Multiple syllable	Sentences II-B-2 and C-1.
Simple noun	Sentences II-A-1, A-2, B-1 and B-2.
Compound noun	
with modifier	Sentence II-C-2.
without modifier	Sentence II-C-1.

A.2. Basically, nouns in Chinese may not be negated, and bu (不) may negate only VPs. Thus NP^1 bu NP^2 is not a complete structure. It is derived from a full structure by omitting the verbal element. There are two different full structures from which NP^1 bu NP^2 is derived.

	TOPIC	COMMENT
(A)	N^1	neg EV N^1
(B)	V^1N^1	neg V^1N^1

B.1. The full structure of (A) — N^1 neg EV N^1 -- is a Topic-Identification construction in which the identity is denied. Compare the following:

	TOPIC	COMMENT (Identification)	
	N^1	neg EV N^2	
(1)	老张	不是中国人	Lao Zhang is not a Chinese [Lao Zhang is not to be identified as a Chinese.]
(2)	他	不像他父亲	He does not look like his father. [He does not resemble his father.]

(3) 中国人 不像中国人 Though Chinese, he does not look Chinese. [Being Chinese does not resemble Chinese.]

Sentence (4) is derived from sentence (3), above.

(3) 中国人不像中国人。

(4) 中国人不(   )中国人

Similarly the following expressions occur when the EV is omitted; i.e., sentence (7) is derived from (6) and sentence (9) is derived from (8).

(5) 山不像/是山。

(6) 山不(   )山

(7) 水不像/是水。

(8) 水不(   )水

B.2. The contracted expressions, in the form of N^1 bu (EV) N^1, are always used in duplicate, parallel constructions, such as:

(9) 人不人鬼不鬼

(10) 山不山水不水

(11) 男不男女不女

(12) 僧不僧俗不俗

These parallel constructions are used in larger structures, such as:

(II-A-1) 人不人，鬼不鬼，这是什么东西呀？

(II-A-2) 山不山，水不水，不知道他画的是什么！

Here the parallel construction quite dramatically describes the subject matter 这（东西）in II-A-1 and 他画的（画）in II-A-2. This type of parallel construction, however, may not be used either independently or as a comment on a topic. For example:

- 这张画山不山水不水 NA
- 山不山水不水 NA

B.3. N^1 bu N^1, N^2 bu N^2 may also be expressed in the following ways:

(a) N^1 ji/ji neg EV N^1 N2 you/ye neg EV N^2 as in (14) below.

(b) N^1 ye bu N^1, N^2 ye bu N^2 as in (15) below.

(c) N^1 fei N^1, N^2 fei N^2 as in (16) below.

(13) 人即不像人，鬼又/也不像鬼。

(14) 人也不是人，鬼又/也不是鬼。

(15) 人非人，鬼非鬼。

As in the case of all contracted expressions, it has a great deal of emphasis which is lacking in its counterpart, the full expression.

C.1. The full structure (B) is an affirmative-negative phrase which presents the alternative of an action, whether it occurs or not. Compare the following examples:

(16) 挣钱不挣钱	[to earn money or not to earn money] whether one earns money or not
(17) 是日本貨不是日本貨	[is Japanese product or is not Japanese product] whether it is a Japanese product or not

The form N bu N may also be derived from the structure as illustrated by (16) and (17); V^1N^1 neg V^1N^1. For instance, (18) below is derived from (16) and (19) is derived from (17).

(16) 挣钱不挣钱　　　　(17) 是日本貨不是日本貨

(18) (　)钱不(　)钱　　　　(19) (　)日本貨不(　)日本貨

In such contracted forms, it is not always clear exactly which verb has been omitted. Therefore, as we see below, the verb used in each verb-object expression is different from the others, but each of the following phrases may be contracted into the same single expression, N^1 bu N^1:

(16) 挣钱不挣钱

(20) 要钱不要钱

(21) 给钱不给钱

(22) 用钱不用钱

(23) 提钱不提钱

} (　)钱不(　)钱

Note the special case of the verb you (有). While in the uncontracted form, the negation mark is mei (没). In the derived form, mei is changed to bu (不). Thus:

(24) 有钱没有钱　　钱不钱

Therefore, from the structure NP^1 bu NP^1 it is only possible to know that a structural element--a verb--is omitted, but it is not possible to know which precise lexical item has been left out. However, since the structure in question is never used independently, the omitted V is usually determined from the context.

C.2. The NP^1 bu NP^1 as derived from (B) may be used in the following larger structures:

As a topic:

(25) 钱不钱不要紧。　Money or no money, it is not important.

(26) 学位不学位我们一会儿再谈。　Degree or no degree, let us talk about it again later.

(27) 日本货不日本货没有什么影响。	Whether it is a Japanese product or not, it would not matter much.

As a modifier to another N:

(28) 钱不钱的事	the matter of money
(29 学位不学位的问题	the question of an academic degree
(30) 日本货不日本货的影响	the influence of being a Japanese product (or, being made in Japan)
(31) 钱不钱的事情我不考虑。	The matter of having money or not is not my concern.
(32) 学位不学位的问题 你应当表示一点意见。	You should share your reactions concerning the question of academic degrees.
(33) 日本货不日本货的影响相当大。	The impact of being a Japanese product is fairly significant.

As part of a comment:

(34) 这不是别的就是钱不钱的事。	This is nothing else but a matter of money.
(35) 你找得到工作找不到工作 不见得是学位不学位的问题。	Whether or not you find any job may not necessarily be related to the problem of an academic degree.
(36) 他认为这是受日本货不日本货 的影响。	In his opinion, it is affected by whether or not it is a Japanese product.

In conditional constructions: It serves as the component expressing the condition or the cause, when preceded by bugan (不管), guanta (管他), etc.

(37) 管他钱不钱，先订了位子再说。	Who cares about money (cost) let us make the reservation first.

(38) 不论学位不学位只要有才能就行。
Whether you have a degree or not is unimportant, as long as you are capable.

(39) 不管日本货不日本货便宜就好。
It does not matter whether it is a Japanese product or not--whatever is inexpensive is acceptable.

To be followed by meiguanxi (没关系), wusuowei (无所谓), etc.:

(40) 钱不钱没关系，你喜欢这份工作就好。
As long as you like this assignment, money is unimportant.

(41) 学位不学位无所谓，主要的是增长学识。
The primary goal is to increase one's knowledge; whether one works for a degree is not significant.

(42) 日本货不日本货随便，你要卖我就要。
It does not matter whether it is a Japanese product or not. As long as you are ready to sell, I will buy (take it).

C.3. The NP^1 bu NP^1 form derived from structure (B) may also be expressed in the following ways:

(a) 是否 V N as in (43) and (44) below.

(b) V N 与否 as in (45) and (46) below.

(43) 是否挣钱

(44) 是否要钱

(45) 挣钱与否

(46) 用钱与否

D. In summary, the form NP^1 bu NP^1 should be treated as a derived form of two formally identical but syntactically different forms: NP^1 bu NP^1 (A) and NP^1 bu NP^1 (B). Because of the basic structural difference between (A) and (B), the derived forms from each of them are used differently.

7 The Usage of VP/S bu? VP/S 不?

I. Form:

VP/S bu?

II. Examples:

A. 这个像一本小说不? Doesn't it sound like a novel?

B. 元元，你要件东西不? "Yuan-yuan, don't you want something?"

III. Notes:

A. The negative bu (不) is suffixed to a statement (Topic-Comment construction or Topicless construction) and thereby converts the statement into an affirmative-negative question.

B.1. This usage of bu? (不 ?) is derived by omitting the negative part of the affirmative-negative question construction:

NP VP neg VP? NP VP neg (VP)?

(8) 你要不要? ⟷ 你要不? Do you want it or not?

(9) 他买书不买书? ⟷ 他买书不? Does he want books?

(10) 这个像小说不像? ⟷ 这个像小说不? Does this sound like a novel?

(11) 你要一个不要? ⟷ 你要一个不? Would you like one?

B.2. Generally, an affirmative-negative question construction is presented as having the following variants:

(a) VP neg VP? 你要书不要书? Do you want books or not?

(b) VP neg V? 你要书不要?

(c) V neg V Obj 你要不要书?

To this list, the following variant should be added:

(d) VP neg?   你要书不？

Variant (a) is the base form and while technically any of these variants may be used in any circumstances, (b), (c), and (d) are derived from (a) in order to avoid clumsiness when the object is a long and involved NP. For instance, if the object is wo zuotien cong NY mai lai de shu (我昨天从纽约买来的书), the base form (a) or (b) would render the sentence very clumsy, as in (12) and (13):

(12) 你要我昨天从纽约买来的书，
不要我昨天从纽约买来的书？
Do you want the book I bought from NY yesterday or not?

(13) 你要我昨天从纽约买来的书不要？

In this case either (c) or (d) is preferred:

(14) 你要不要我昨天从纽约买来的书？

(15) 你要我昨天从纽约买来的书不？

8 The Usage of cai Aux VP/SVP ne 才 Aux VP/SVP 呢

I. Forms:

A. cai SVP ne

B. cai Aux VP ne

II. Examples:

A.1. 他才英俊呢！ He certainly is handsome!

A.2. 他才不算英俊呢！ He certainly is not handsome!

B.1. 他才想去呢！ He certainly wishes to go!

B.2. 他才不想去呢！ He certainly does not wish to go!

III. Notes:

A. This use of adverbial cai (才) with ne (呢) emphasizes the SVP or the Aux VP, as the case may be.

B.1. There are the following variations to the structure in this usage:

Affirmative, negative VP:

(1) 他才英俊呢！ He certainly is handsome!

(2) 他才想去呢！ He indeed would like to go!

(3) 他才不英俊呢。 He really is homely.
[He really is not handsome.]

(4) 他才不想去呢。 He certainly will not go.

B.2. The intonation pattern for this usage is:

TOPIC cai VP ne

(5)a 他才笨呢！ He certainly is stupid!

(5)b 他才想去呢！ He really is dying to go!

(5)c 他才不聪明呢！ He certainly is *not* smart!

(5)d 他才不想去呢！ He certainly would *not* like to go!

C. Contrast between *cai* VP *ne* meaning 'on the contrary' and *cai* VP *ne* meaning 'certainly.'

C.1. In both cases *cai*....*ne* is used with Aux VP or SVP and affirmatively or negatively:

(6) 他才笨呢。
a. He, on the contrary, is stupid.
b. He, no one else, is stupid.
c. He certainly is stupid.

(7) 他才不聪明呢。
a. He is not smart (contrary to what you think).
b. He really is *not* smart.

(8) 他才去呢。
a. *He* wants to go (no one else).
b. He certainly is *dying to go*.

(9) 他才不想去呢。
a. *He* is the one who is not willing to go.
b. He certainly is *not* willing to go.

C.2. Although the structure appears to be the same, there is a crucial distinction to intonation. In *cai*....*ne* meaning 'on the contrary,' the primary stress is on the topic. In *cai*....*ne* meaning 'indeed,' the primary primary stress is on the adverb *cai*.

(10)a 他才笨呢。 *He* is stupid (no one else).

(10)b 他才笨呢。 He *is* stupid (indeed).

(10)c **他**才不笨呢。 *He*, on the contrary, is not stupid.

(10)d 他**才**不笨呢。 He *is not* stupid.

(10)e **他**才想去呢。 *He* wants to go.

(10)f 他**才**想去呢。 He *wants* to go.

(10)g **他**才不想去呢。 *He* does not want to go.

(10)h 他**才**不想去呢。 He *does not* want to go.

9 The Usage of cai EVP/FVP ne 才EVP/FVP呢

I. Forms:

A. cai EVP ne

B. cai FVP ne

II. Examples:

A.1.	他才是"天下无双"呢。	[He is indeed a case of one of a kind.] He is indeed one of a kind.
A.2.	这才叫"放下屠刀立地成佛"呢。	This is indeed what they mean when they say "putting down the butcher's knife and becoming a Buddha right on the spot."
B.1.	他才不买呢。	He certainly will not buy it.
B.2.	我才不怕呢。	I certainly will not be scared of it.

III. Notes:

A. This form is used to express the speaker's assertive identification or the Topic in A and the negative aspect of the FVP in B.

B.1. Form A is used with an affirmative EVP. It serves to emphasize that the topic is a perfect example of the comment.

B.2. The NP after the EV may be of the following forms:

EV - regular noun

(1)	他才是地道的北方人呢。	He certainly is a perfect example of a northerner.

EV - formula phrase

(2)	他才是布鼓雷门呢。	He is certainly a perfect example of "making a fool of oneself by foolish display."

B.3. The intonation of Form A places primary stress on the NP after the EV and places the secondary stress on the topic.

(1) 他才是地道的北方人呢。

(2) 他才是布鼓雷门呢。

B.4. Contrast Topic cai EVP ne which emphasizes Topic-Identification with cai....ne which means 'on the contrary.

B.4.a. These two structures appear to be identical. However, when the topic is emphasized, the EVP is always affirmative. When cai....ne is used to mean 'on the contrary,' the EVP may be negative. For example:

(3) 他才是好学不倦呢。

His certainly is a case of being fond of scholarship without growing tired of it.'

He, no one else, is an example of the saying "hao xue bu jüan."

(3)a 他才不是好学不倦呢。

He is not, as expected, an example of "hao xue bu jüan."

B.4.b. In intonation, there is a difference in where the primary stress lies. To emphasize the topic, the primary stress is placed on the NP or on the formula phrase after the EV, while in the other usages, the primary stress is on the topic.

(3)b 他才是好学不倦呢。 emphasis on identification

(3)c 他才是好学不倦呢。 contrary to normal expectation

(3)d 他才不是好学不倦呢。 " "

C.1. Form B is used to express the speaker's feeling of certainty. The FVP used in cai....ne may either be affirmative or negative. Note that the negative in the FVP may be omitted as in the examples.

(4) a 他的胃病刚好，你给他这些油腻的菜，他才吃呢。	He is just recovering from an ulcer, now you are offering him these rich dishes (how will he eat it!) He certainly will not eat it.
(4) b 他的胃病刚好，你给他这些油腻的菜 他才不吃呢。	same
(5) a 你说一个七十几岁的老年人能在两小时跑了三十英里，不可能，我才信呢。	You maintain that an elderly man in his 70's can run 30 miles in two hours. It is impossible (how can I believe it). I certainly will not believe it.
(5) b ……我才不信呢。	same

C.2. Though both cai EVP ne and cai negative FVP ne carry the same message (the speaker's confidence in his judgment and the negative result of the FVP), there is, however, a difference.

C.2.a. The affirmative expression: 他才吃呢 is the equivalent of 他怎么会吃呢 or 他怎么可能吃呢. In the affirmative expression, cai....ne is an equivalent of zemma hui (怎么会), 'how can it be likely to happen' or zemma keneng (怎么可能) 'how can it be possible?' It is used to indicate a rhetorical expression, such as 'how can one....?' which implies that 'one cannot,' or 'how can it be possible,' which means that 'it cannot be possible.' On the other hand, the negative expression, adv cai....ne is a marker of assertion or emphasis: 'certainly,' 'really,' 'no doubt about it,' etc.

C.2.b. In addition, this usage of cai....ne should be contrasted with cai....ne, which means contrary to normal expectations. For example:

(6)a. 他才吃呢。 He certainly will not eat it.

He (not I) will eat.

(6)b 他才不吃呢。 He certainly will not eat it.

He (not I) will not eat it.

The ambiguity of the structure is clarified by intonation in the following way:

In the usage where cai....ne emphasizes the negative aspect of the FVP, the primary stress is placed on the FVP with secondary stress placed on the topic, and there is no pause between the topic and its comment.

(6)a 他才吃呢。

(6)b 他才不吃呢。

In the usage where cai....ne is used to indicate contrary facts, the primary stress is placed on the topic and there is a pause between the topic and the comment. For example:

他才吃呢。

他才不吃呢。

10 The Usage of NP Chuwai 除外

I. Form:

NP chuwai

II. Examples:

A. 这本书除外你都可以拿。	Except for this book, you may take any others.
B. 出席大会的会員除外，尚有旁听十五名。	In addition to those members attending the conference, there are also 15 observers.
C. 本会会員每年每人需交会費十元. 荣誉会員及学生会員除外。	All members of this association should pay the annual dues of $10 each, excluding honorary members and student members.

III. Notes:

A. While the word chuwai (除外) is sometimes simply defined as a verb meaning 'with the exception of' or 'not counting,' it is also often rendered as 'to exclude.' If it is to be seen as a regular FV, it must be understood that its behavior displays certain unique characteristics.

B.1. chuwai is always preceded by a NP, either simple noun as in (1), SV-de N as in (2), VP-de (N) as in (3), or T - C construction in (4)

(1) 中国书除外	not including Chinese books/ other than Chinese books
(2) 好的除外	not including the nice ones/ other than the nice ones
(3) 已经坏了的除外	not including those that are already broken down/ other than those that are already broken down
(4) 你买的中国书除外	not including/other than those Chinese books you brought

B.2. The form NP chuwai may be used as the first or second component in a compound sentence. When so used, NP chuwai component is the exception to the general rule of the other component. For example:

	COMPONENT I	COMPONENT II	
	NP chuwai		
(5)	已经报名的除外	其他学生必需五月一日到校	Except those who already registered, students must arrive at school on May 1.
(6)	中国书除外	别的都不减价	Nothing is on sale, except for the Chinese books.
(7)	这七天假期除外	不必每天写大小写字练习	Except on these 7 holidays, you do not have to do calligraphy exercises everyday.
(8)	木瓜除外	其他水果都不需要再买	Do not buy more of any kind of fruit except papaya.

	COMPONENT I	COMPONENT II	
		NP chuwai	
(9)	凡持有入场券的由第一号门入场	职员家属除外	Ticket holders may enter the arena from Gate No. 1, except families of employees.
(10)	每年每人应选读十五个学分	特别学生除外	Every student should register for 15 credits every school year, except special students.
(11)	凡成绩总平在乙等以上的直接升级不需要考试	外国学生及留级学生除外	All those whose averages are above B will be promoted to higher grades without examination, with the exception of foreign students and students who were repeating the grade for the second time.

When used as a second component, words like danshi (但是), and keshi (可是), may precede it to emphasize its exceptional character.

B.3. NP chuwai may also be used after another NP, usually to offer additional information as an afterthought.

(12) 这些书，中国书除外，要卖多少钱？ — What are the prices of these books, aside from the Chinese books?

(13) 决定参加的会员，职员除外，一共五十名。 — There are altogether 50 members who decided to participate, not counting officers.

C. chuwai and chule....yiwai (除了 .... 以外) compared:

C.1. Both chuwai and chule....yiwai may serve as either the first or second component in a compound sentence, in either case, the relationship between its components remains the same.

(14) 中国人除外还有日本人。 — There are Japanese people in addition to Chinese.

除了中国人以外，还有日本人。

(15) 中国书除外别的都贵。 — All books are expensive except Chinese books.

除了中国书以外，别的都贵。

C.2. chuwai may be used with only NP; chule....yiwai may be used with either NP, VP, TC, or even SV.

(16) 除了你买以外，谁都不买。 — No one wants to buy it, except you.

(17) 除了贵以外，没有什么特别。 — There is nothing special about it, except that it is expensive.

C.3. In chule....yiwai, chule may be shortened to chu (除) or yiwai (以外) may be replaced by zhiwai (之外), but not simultaneously. chuwai, in contrast, may neither be abbreviated nor omitted.

除了………以外，

(　)………以外

除了………(　)

除(　)………以外

除(　)………之外

C.4. chule....yiwai is the first component while NP chuwai is usually the second component.

(18) 除了中国书以外，别的都貴。 All books are expensive, except Chinese books.

中国书除外别的都貴。

书都貴，中国书除外。

D. chuwai and Functive Verbs which are similar.

D.1. chuwai may function as certain Functive Verbs do when they occur as comments of a Topic-Comment construction.

(19) 犯规者开除。 Those who have violated the rules will be expelled.

(20) 记过三次者停学。 Those who have had three warnings will be suspended.

(21) 高中生不算。 Those who are in the senior high are not counted.

(22) 留级生除外。 Those who have to repeat the course grade are excluded.

The object of the verb kaichu (开除), tingxue (停学), buswan (不算), and chuwai (除外) is the preceding NP .

D.2. *chuwai* differs from others in the following ways:

D.2.a. *chuwai* may not have aspect markers *le* (了), *zhe* (着), *guo* (过), *ne* (呢), etc.

(23) 他停学了。 He is suspended/has been suspended.

(24) 他降班了。 He is demoted/has been demoted.

(25) 他开除了。 He is expelled/has been expelled.

(26) 这个不算了。 It is not counted/has been excluded.

* 这个除外了 NA

(27) 他停过学。 He had once been suspended.

(28) 他降过班。 He had once been demoted.

(29) 他开过除/他开除过。 He had once been expelled.

* 他除外过/他除过外 NA

D.2.b. The object of *chuwai* must precede *chuwai*. The other verbs may be followed by their object.

(30) 本校开除学生三名。 Our school has expelled three students.

* 今年除外会员三名 NA

D.2.c. *chuwai* may not be used to modify other elements while the other verbs may serve as VPs modifying nouns.

(31) 开除的学生 the students being expelled

(32) 停学的理由 the reason for suspension

* 除外的会员 NA

In short, if one is to consider *chuwai* as a FV, the many restrictions in its applications must be noted.

11 The Usage of NP dao:"...." NP 道：“……”

I. Forms:

A. NP/S dao: "---"

B. NP/S V-dao: "---"

II. Examples:

A.1. 老王道：“好！” Lao Wang said: "Fine."

2. 老王气上胸头，道：“好！” Lao Wang became extremely angry and said,"Fine!"

B.1. 老王回道：“好！” Lao Wang answered: "Fine."

2. 老王想道：“好！” Lao Wang thought to himself,"Fine."

III. Notes:

A.1. In this pattern dao (道) is used as a marker of a direct quotation. It is always followed by a colon and quotation marks.

A.2. The functions of Form A and Form B are slightly different in that in Form A, dao is used independently to signal the relationship between the preceding NP/S and the following quotation. Thus for Form A the semantic function includes both (1) to say and (2) the function marker of a direct quotation. In Form B, however, dao is part of a compound. The first element of the compound is an action-manner verb. The semantic function of dao in the compound is to indicate that a quotation follows.

A.3. Therefore, in Form A the word dao is translated as "---said: '---'" while in Form B it is often not translated.

B.1. In Form A, dao may be modified in the following way:

(1)a 老王忙道：“好！” Lao Wang hurriedly said: "Fine."

(1)b 老王又道：“好！” Lao Wang said again: "Fine."

(1)c 老王便道：“好！” Lao Wang then said: "Fine."

(1)d 这时老王大哭大喊道：“好！好！” At this juncture Lao Wang, crying and shouting, said: "Fine, fine!"

It may be preceded by either a NP or a S:

(2)a 老王看了非常生气道：“好！” Lao Wang saw it, became very angry, and said: "Fine."

(2)b 老王想这事有情有理忙道：“好！” Lao Wang considered this to be a reasonable proposal and hurriedly said "Fine!"

(2)c 老李向老王使了一个眼神儿，老王道：“好！” Lao Li signaled Lao Wang with his eyes. Lao Wang said: "Fine!"

B.2.a. In Form B, dao occurs in synonymous compounds and is sometimes optional, as illustrated in the example below. When dao is omitted, the direct quotation may immediately follow the main verb.

(3)a 老王问(道)：“好吗？” Lao Wang asked: "Is it O.K.?"

(3)b 老王讲(道)：“好的多坏的少。” Lao Wang explained: "There are more perfect ones than broken ones."

(3)c 老王说(道)：“好！” Lao Wang said: "Fine!"

(3)d 老王答(道)：“好！” Lao Wang replied: "Fine!"

B.2.b. However, in the following sentences the first element of the compound is an action manner verb and therefore may not be used by itself to indicate a direct quotation. Dao is the obligatory link between the topic, verb, and quotation.

(4)a 老王笑道：“好！” Lao Wang smiled and said: "Fine!"

(4)b 老王叫道：“好！” Lao Wang shouted: "Fine!"

(4)c 老王骂道：“好！” Lao Wang cursed: "Shame on you!"

(4)d 老王叹道：“好！” Lao Wang sighed and said: "All right!"

B.2.c. A variation of the type of example listed under B.2.b. is when the verb represents a thought, rather than an utterance.

(5)a 老王想道：“为什么呢？” Lao Wang thought, "Why?"

(5)b 老王暗道：“好手艺！” Lao Wang said to himself: "What a performance!"

(5)c 老王自忖道：“还是早走吧！” Lao Wang thought (secretly figured), "Better leave here soon!"

B.3. Whether dao is used in Form A or Form B, it is almost always translated as 'say.' It is important to note that dao: "---"' may never be used with "-le." For instance: *老王道了“好！” is not an acceptable grammatical utterance.

C. Contrast between dao and shuo used as quotation markers.

C.1.a. Both are used as markers of direct quotation.

(6)a 他道：“好！” He said, "Fine!"

(6)b 他说：“好！”

C.1.b. Both may be followed by quotations of silent thoughts or utterances.

(7)a 他想道：“对吧！” He thought: "It probably is correct."

(7)b 他心里说：“对吧！”

C.1.c. Neither may have the suffix -le.

* 他说了“好” NA

* 他道了“好” NA

C.1.d. Both may be modified by adverbs:

(8)a 他又道：“好！” He said again: "Fine!"

(8)b 他又说：“好！”

(8)c 老王便道：“好！” He then said: "Fine!"

(8)d 老王便说：“好！”

C.1.e. Both may be preceded by a NP or S:

(9)a 他心中暗喜道：“好！” He was secretly pleased and said: "Fine!"

(9)b 他心中暗喜说：“好！”

C.2. However, there are important differences.

C.2.a. Shuo may be modified by manner modifier VP de or VP zhe, while dao may not:

(10) 高兴的说：“好！” happily said: "Fine!"

* 高兴的道：“好！” NA

(11) 笑着说：“好！” said with a smile: "Fine!"

* 笑着道：“好！” NA

C.2.b. Dao may be used as the second element of a verb compound, while shuo may not:

(12) 老王问道：“谁？” Lao Wang asked "Who is it?"

* 老王问说：“谁？” NA

(13) 老王喊道：“别动！” Lao Wang shouted "Don't move!"

* 老王喊说：“别动！” NA

C.2.c. Shuo may be used with time words such as zuotien 'yesterday' and jintien 'today,' but dao may not:

(14) 昨天老王说：“我的工作太多” Yesterday Lao Wang said: "The work load is too heavy."

* 昨天老王道：“我的工作太多。” NA

C.2.d. Shuo is preferred in modern writing whereas dao is found mainly in classic novels or in modern historical novels such as 武侠小说 wu-xia xiao-shuo 'novels of chivalry.'

12 The Usage of V N/Pron de N   V N/Pron 的 N

I. Forms:

A. V N de N

B. V Pron de N

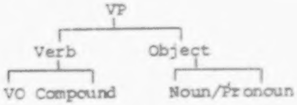
II. Examples:

A. 投老王的票。 Vote for Lao Wang

B. 告他的状。 Sue him.

III. Notes:

A.1. On the surface, the form V N/Pron de N is similar to structures such as mai ni de fang (买你的房), 'buy your house,' in which a verb is followed by a modified object where the modification is a posessive N or Pronoun. The form in question has a complex derivation. It is derived from a VP construction of Verb-Object, where the Verb is a VO compound.



[7]

B.1. Normally, an object may not follow a VP which is a VO compound. Expressions such as * 写信你 , or * 打电话你 are not acceptable. In these cases, the OBJECT may be expressed using a CO-VP preceding the main VERB: CO-VP, M-VP. Thus, the above NA expressions may be converted into the following acceptable expressions:

	CO-VP	M-VP	
	CO-Verb N/Pron	VO compound	
(1)	给你	打电话	to call you on the phone

(2) 给你 写信 to write a letter to you.

However, certain VO compounds may not be used in the CO-VP M-VP structure without altering the original meaning of the expression. For instance, the expression 'to vote for you' may not be expressed as ° 给你投票 (to cast the vote on your behalf) and 'to sue for you' may not be expressed as ° 给你告状 (to sue ~~someone~~ on your behalf).

For VO compounds that may not be expressed in the structure of CO-VP M-VP the structure V N/Pron de N must be used.

B.2. The structural relationship between elements of this form is as follows: The basic structure is VERB OBJECT, where the VERB is a VO of the special type. Since CO-VP may not be used for this special type of VO, it is then transformed into V N/Pron O by splitting the VO and placing the O of the VO after the N/Pron. The particle de (的) is added to strengthen further the syntactical linkage. This complex process is diagrammed below:

VP	
VERB	OBJECT
VO	N/Pron
V	N/Pron O
V	N/Pron de O

[8]

(3) 投 老王 的票 to vote for Lao Wang

(4) 告 你 的状 to sue you

B.3. The structure of this form has the following restrictions:

B.3.a. The VERB must be one of the special type of VOs, from which the O may never be omitted without changing the meaning of the verb. For instance, tou piao (投票) is 'to vote,' tou lan (投兰) 'to shoot the basket (basketball),' gao zhuang (告状) 'to sue,' gao jia (告假) 'to request a leave of absence.' Other such verbs may include the following:

(5)a	kaiwanxiao	开玩笑	to make fun of someone
(5)b	shuoxianhua	说闲话	to gossip about so and so
(5)c	shengxianchi	生闲气	to quarrel with someone on trivial matters
(5)d	dasuanpan	打算盘	to calculate advantage over someone or something
(5)e	zhanpianyi	占便宜	to take advantage of someone or some situation
(5)f	qingke	请客	to treat someone to a meal
(5)g	zhaomafan	找麻煩	to ask for unnecessary trouble
(5)h	laguanchai	拉官差	to press someone for free service
(5)i	geilian	给脸	to give honor to someone
(5)j	zaoyao	造谣	to fabricate a rumor about someone
(5)k	diaoyan	挑眼	to find fault with someone
(5)l	dacha	打岔	to interrupt a conversation or thought of someone
(5)m	daoluan	捣乱	to make a disturbance for someone or some situation
(5)n	shangdang	上当	to have been taken advantage of by someone

B.3.b. The N/Pron may not be a noun which cannot be personified, such as shu (树), 'tree.'

* 占树的便宜 NA

* 上树的当 NA

B.4. The particle de serves here as a structural link and may be omitted.

(6)a 开他的玩笑 to make fun of him

(6)b 开他( )玩笑

(7)a 说他的闲话 to gossip about her

(7)b 说他( )闲话

C. Comparison of V N/Pron(de)O and VO^{1}O^2:

When de is omitted, the structure appears to be that of a verb with two objects, VERB OBJECT^1 OBJECT^2. Compare the following (8) and (9):

VERB OBJECT^1 OBJECT^2

(8) 给 你 钱 to give you money

VERB N/PRON (de) OBJECT

(9) 造 你(的) 谣 to create a rumor about you

These two similar structures may be distinguished in the following ways:

C.1. For the VERB OBJECT^1 OBJECT^2 structure, either OBJECT^1 or OBJECT^2 may be omitted; the remaining form is still an acceptable expression. For instance, gei ni (qian) = gei ni (给你) is 'to give you,' and gei (ni) qian = gei qian (给钱) is 'to give money--to pay.' However, for the form VERB N/PRON (de) OBJECT, the N/Pron may be omitted without changing the basic meaning, but not the OBJECT. If the OBJECT is omitted, either the remaining part means something entirely different: zhaoni

(找你) 'to look for you,' as opposed to zhaoni mafan (找你麻烦) 'to make trouble for you,' or render the expression nonacceptable as in zhan ni (占你) from zhan ni pianyi (占你便宜).

C.2. VERB OBJECT^1 OBJECT^2 may never have de between the two OBJECTS. If it does, the meaning is entirely different from the original. For instance:

(10)a 我问老王问题。 I ask Lao Wang questions.

(10)b 我问老王的问题。 I ask Lao Wang's questions. The question I asked Lao Wang.

C.3. The VERB OBJECT^1 OBJECT^2 may be converted to a ba construction or to prestated topic construction. The VERB N/Pron (de) OBJECT may not.

(11)a 我给你钱。 I give you money

(11)b 我把钱给你 " "

(11)c 钱我给你 " "

(12) 他造你的谣。 He makes a rumor about you.

* 他把谣造你 NA

* 谣他造你 NA

D. Contrast Verb with a Modified Object where the modifier is N/Pron de form with V N/Pron de N:

D.1. The verb in Verb with a Modified Object may not be a VO compound (13). In V N/Pron de N, the verb and the modified N must be a VO compound (14).

(13) 告你的朋友 (告 =simple verb) to sue your friend

* 告状你的朋友 (告状= VO compound) NA

(14) 投你的票 (投票 = VO compound) [to cast my vote for you] to vote for you

* 捣你 (捣 = simple verb) NA

D.2. The object in Verb with a Modified Object may be modified in many ways:

(15)a 买你的房 to buy your house

(15)b 买你的新房 to buy your new house

The object in V N/Pron de N may not be modified.

* 告你的厉害状 NA

* 捣你的新蛋 NA

D.3. The marker de is not optional in Verb with a Modified Object, except where special usages are permitted (your father, etc.). The marker de is in all cases optional in the form under discussion.

(15)a 买你的房 buy your house

* 买你( )房 NA

(16)a 开你的玩笑 make fun of you

(16)b 开你( )玩笑 " "

D.4. When the Object in both forms is quantified, the quantity statement may occur before or after the N/Pron de in the modified Object:

(17)a 买一所你的房 buy one of your houses

(17)b 买你的一所房 buy a house of yours

In this V N/Pron de N construction, the quantity statement replaces de.

(18)a 找你一次麻烦 to make unnecessary trouble for you once or twice/ couple of times

*　找你的一次麻煩　NA

*　找你一次的麻煩　NA

13 The Usage of Topic dou Comment?   Topic 都 Comment?

I. Form:

Topic-dou-Comment

II. Examples:

A.	你都作什么了？	What (things) do you do?
B.	你都给他什么？	What (things) do you give him?
C.	你都给谁钱？	To whom do you give money?
D.	你都到哪去了？	Where did you go?

III. Notes:

A. The usage of dou (都) to be examined here cannot be simply rendered into English. It functions to convert a simple Question Word question (QW question) into a question for which a plural answer is expected. That is, to the question "Who?" the answer anticipated is not just one single individual, but possibly a number of individuals.
To the question "Where?" the answer is not just a single location, but possibly a collection of separate locations. For example:

(II-D)	你都到哪去了？	Where (what places) did you go?
Ans:	中国，新加坡，伦敦，波士頓。	China, Singapore, London, and Boston.

B. This particular usage of dou has the following characteristics:

B.1. It occurs only in a Question Word question construction. In other question constructions, the function of dou is different.

(1)	你都要什么？	What (things) do you want? (correct)

°(2)	你都要不要？	NA°(Do you or don't you want them all?)
°(3)	你都要吗？	NA°(Do you want them all?)
*	你都要钱吗？	NA

B.2. It may occur in the following structures:

i. Topic dou Comment? (where the comment contains the QW)

ii. dou Topic (where the topic is the QW) Comment?

In the case of (i), the QW constitutes either the whole comment (4) or part of the comment (5-12).

(4)	你都怎么了？	What happened to you (all these days)?
(5)	你都买什么？	What things do you want to buy?
(6)	你都给谁钱？	Whom (pl.) do you give money to?
(7)	你都给他什么？	What things do you give him?
(8)	你都替谁买？	On whose (pl.) behalf do you buy it?
(9)	你都为什么？	For what reasons (do you do that)?
(10)	你都到过哪？	Where have you been?
(11)	你都买那本书？	Which books do you want to buy?
(12)	你都怎么准备？	In what ways do you prepare it?

Examples of cases wherein the topic of a question construction is a QW:

(13)	都谁去了？	Who went (all of those who went)?
(14)	都哪卖？	[Where are the places where this is available?] Where is this available?

(15)	都什么坏了?	[What things are broken?] What is broken?
(16)	都谁教过?	[Who are those who taught?] Who taught?
(17)	都哪个对?	[Which are the ones that are correct?] Which is correct?
(18)	都什么运到了?	[What are all the things which were delivered?] What were delivered?

B.3. Structurally, these are derived and shortened from the following possible forms:

(13) 都(有)谁去了?

(14) 都(有)哪卖?

(15) 都(有)什么坏了?

(16) 都(有)谁教过?

(17) 都(有)哪个对?

(18) 都(有)什么运到了?

B.4. Furthermore, all of them may be used in a larger structure as comments to other topics.

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
		dou Topic (QW) - Comment	
(19)-(13)	昨天的晚会	都(有)谁去了?	Who went to the evening party yesterday?
(20)-(14)	这本书	都(有)哪卖?	What are all the places where this book is sold?
(21)-(15)	这部机器	都(有)什么坏了	What are the parts of this machine that are broken?

(22)-(16) 这班学生 都(有)谁教过? Who has taught this class?

(23)-(17) 这份答题 都(有)哪个对? Which items of this set of answers are correct?

(24)-(18) 我们订的货 都(有)什么运到了? Of our ordered merchandise, what has been delivered?

B.5. The question construction can be either affirmative or negative. All the illustrations given above are affirmative. The following are illustrations of negative question construction:

(25) 这里有五家有名的饭馆子，你都没到过哪家? Of these five well-known restaurants, which ones have you not been to?

(26) 我们这些人，他都没请谁? (Among us, whom did he not invite?) Which of us did he not invite?

(27) 这些书你都不要哪本? Of these books, which don't you want?

B.6. The question construction can be used to refer to an action in the past, present, or future.

(28) 昨天你都到哪去了? Where did you go yesterday? (past)

(29) 今天你都要到哪去? Where do you want to go today? (present)

(30) 明天你都到哪去? Where are you going tomorrow? (future)

B.7. The question construction can be any of the five major construction types. For example: Topic-Identification type in (31), Topic-Function type in (32), Topic-Location type in (33), Topic-Existence type in (34), and Topic-Description type in (35).

(31)	齐白石的号都是什么？	What are all the hao of Qi Baishi?
(32)	他都作什么？	What does he do?
(33)	这本书都在什么图书馆里有？	In which libraries can this book be found?
(34)	纽约都有什么好玩的地方？	What points of interest are there in New York City?
(35)	纽约都怎么有名？	In what ways is New York City known? (Why is New York City famous?)

C. Comparison of QW question with dou and QW question without dou:

C.1. In terms of the questioner's expectations:

With dou, the questioner expects to have a full account of possible answers.

Without dou this expectation is lacking.

C.2. In terms of answers:

Without dou both A^1 and A^2 below are satisfactory answers:

(36)	问："我应当买什么？"	Q: "What should I get?"
	答：1"你应当买铅笔。"	A^1: "You should buy a pencil."
	答：2"你应当买铅笔纸本子什么的"	A^2: "You should buy a pencil, a notebook, etc."

With dou, A^1 is the expected answer to (37) but not A^2.

(37)	问："我都应当买什么？"	Q: "What should I get?"
	答：1"你应当买铅笔，纸，书等等。"	A^1:"You should buy pencil, paper, books, etc."
	答：2"你应当买铅笔。"	A^2:"You should buy a pen."

However, when only a simple item is to be given as the answer (i.e., only bi (笔) is needed) to a question with dou, the adverbs jiu (就) or zhi (只) are used as in A^3 below:

答：3"你就买笔就行了。"	A^3: "You should just buy a pen, that's all."

C.3. In terms of English translation:

With *dou*, plural forms are used whenever possible; without *dou*, either singular or plural can be used.

(38)	你都买什么书?	What book*s* are you buying?
(39)a	你买什么书?	What book are you buying?
(39)b	你买什么书?	What book*s* are you buying?

C.4. Finally, although *dou* in this particular function occurs in a question, it does not occur in the answer to the question.

(40)	问:“我都应当买什么?”	"What should I get?"
	答:“你应当买纸跟铅笔……。”	"You should get paper and pencil..."

D. If the QW occurs in the topic position, the function of *dou* differs from that under discussion. For instance:

°(13)	谁都来。	(NA) °*Everybody* cones.
°(14)	什么都贵。	(NA) °*Everything* is expensive.
°(15)	哪都有。	(NA) °It exists *everywhere*.
°(16)	谁都来了吧?	(NA) °Has *everybody* come?
°(17)	谁都买了?	(NA) °Who bought all of it? °Who already bought it?
°(18)	哪都有了?	(NA) °Which place has already acquired it?

14 The Usage of Topic dou Comment le Topic 都 Comment 来

I. Form:

Topic dou Comment le

II. Examples:

A. 天都亮了。	It's morning already, let's get up!
B. 都四点了，該做饭了。	It's already 4 o'clock, it's time to prepare dinner.
C. 他都走了，你才来，当然见不着了。	He has left already, and only now are you here. Of course you can't see him.
D. 忙得我都累了，他也不帮忙。	It has been so busy, I am tired already, but he still won't give me a hand.

III. Notes:

A.1. Generally speaking, there are six major functions that may be attributed to the adverb dou (都). They are:

a. Totalizing the topic

(1)a 他们都有了。	[They, all of them, have it.] They all have it.
(1)b 书都卖了。	[Books, all sold.] The books are all sold.

b. Totalizing the object

(2) 这些书我都喜欢。	[These books, I like all of them.] I like all of these books.

c. Inclusive usage of QW

(3) 谁都有。	Everybody has it.

d. As the adverb 'even'[1]

(4) 书都卖了。	Even the books are sold out.

---

[1] Here we use 'even' as a label to signify a particular function of dou which is generally translated as 'even' in English.

e. Inclusive usage of QW construction

(5) 你都看什么书了？ What books have you read?

f. As the adverb 'already'[2]

(6) 书都卖了 The books are already sold out.

Among the six functions, the first four have been explained in other language texts. The fifth function is discussed in chapter 70-A. The last function is to be presented here.

B.1. The topic of the structure Topic dou Comment le may be either singular or plural. For example:

(7) 他都走了。 He is gone already.

(8) 他们都走了。 They are gone already.

The Topic may be either the subject or the object of the VP in the Comment position.

(9) 那个我都卖给他了。 I already sold him that one.

(10) 相机都毁了，谁还能照像！ The camera is smashed already--how could anyone take pictures?

B.2. The VP may be either affirmative or negative.

(11) 我都买了。 I already bought it.

(12) 我都不干了。 I have already stopped working.

The VP may be SVP, FVP, Aux VP, CO-VP, EV, or you.

(13) 我都醒了。 I am already awake.

(14) 我都洗了。 I already cleaned it.

(15) 我都打算做了。 I am already planning to do it.

---

[2] Here, as in d above, the world 'already' is used as a label for a particular function of dou as illustrated in example (6).

(16) 我都替你送去了。 I already delivered it for you.

(17) 他都做父亲了。 He is already a father.

(18) 我都有了。 I already have it.

The VP may either indicate that an action will take place or that an action is completed.

(19) 晚饭都快做好了。 Dinner is almost prepared. (not yet ready)

(20) 书都快卖完了。 The books are almost sold out already. (not yet sold out)

(21) 晚饭都做好了。 Dinner is already ready.

(22) 书都卖完了。 The books are already sold out.

B.3. The sentence particle le is obligatory in this construction. When le is omitted from sentence (7) to (18), the dou will be interpreted as serving some other functions:

(23) ← (7) 他都走。 Even he leaves.

(24) ← (8) 他们都走。 All of them leave. Even they leave.

(25) ← (9) 那个我都卖给他。 Even that one will I sell him. Even I will sell him that one.

(26) ← (10) 相机都毁了……… When all the cameras are broken.

(27) ← (11) 我都买。 Even I will buy it. I buy them all.

(28) ← (12) 我都不喝酒。 Even I don't drink wine.

* (13) 我都醒 NA

(29) ← (14) 我都洗。 Even I will do some washing. I wash them all.

(30)←(15) 我都打算做。 Even I plan to do it. I plan to do all of those things.

○←(16) 我都替你送去 NA°(I will deliver everything for you)

*←(17) 他都做父亲 NA

(31)←(18) 我都有。 Even I have it. I have all of them.

C. Comparison between the fourth category (dou as adverb 'even') and sixth category (dou as adverb 'already'):

C.1. Both functions share the following features:

Affirmative and negative VPs:

(32) 老王都出去了。 Even Lao Wang went out. Lao Wang went out already.

(33) 老王都不出去了。 Even Lao Wang would not go out. Lao Wang already decided not to go out.

SVP, FV, Aux VP, CO-VP, EV, and you:

(34) 他都报告了。 He already reported it. Even he reported it.

(35) 他们都忙了。 He is already busy. Even he is busy now.

(36) 他都是美国公民了。 He is an American citizen already. Even he is an American citizen now.

(37) 纽约都有中国戏院了。 There is already a Chinese theatre in New York. Even New York has a Chinese theatre now.

(38) 他都会做了。 He knows how to do it already. Even he knows how to do it now.

(39) 他都替你做了。 He did it for you already. Even he did it for you now.

C.2. Dou as adverb 'already': the particle le is obligatory. Dou as adverb 'even': the particle le is optional.

(19) 他都走。 Even he leaves.

(7) 他都走了。 He left already.
Even he left.

C.3. Dou as adverb 'already': the stress is on the VP. As adverb 'even,' the stress is on the topic.

(7) 他都走了。 He left already.

他都走了。 Even he left.

C.4. The adverb dou may not be replaced by ye (也) when used to mean already. The adverb dou may be replaced by ye (也) when used to mean 'even.'

(40) 他都四岁了。 He is four years old already.

° 他也四岁了。 NA° (He is also four years old)

(7) 他都/也走了。 Even he left.

C.5. Dou as adverb 'already': the structure can be followed by another in which adverb cai (才) is used. As adverb 'even' the structure cannot be so followed by adverb cai.

(41) 他都病了，你才来看他。 You did not come to see him until he was already sick.

* 他都病了，你才来看他。 NA

C.6. As adverb 'already': the topic may be a time word, place word, or noun, or the topic may be omitted. As adverb 'even': the topic may be either quantified noun, place word, noun, VP, or T-C construction.

(42) 都四岁了。 Four years old already.
(Topic-less)

(43) 现在都四岁了。 It is 4 o'clock already.
(time word)

(44) 天都黑了。	It is dark already. Even the sky is darkened. (noun)
(45) 北京城门都关了。	The gates of Peking are closed already. Even the entrances of Peking are closed. (place word)
(46) 话都说不清楚了。	He can't even speak clearly. (VP)
(47) 他洗都不可以。	It will not do even if he does the washing. (T-C)

In other words, when a place word and simple noun are in the topic position, the sentence is ambiguous.

C.7. As adverb 'already': nothing but another NP can precede its topic. As adverb 'even': the following can precede the topic: lian...., jiushi...., naba...., etc.

(48) 连你都不能去。	Even you cannot go.
(49) 就是你都不能去。	(same)
(50) 哪怕你来都做不完。	Even if you come (you) cannot accomplish it.
(51) 即或你来都做不完。	(same)

C.8. As adverb 'already': the topic of a Topic-Identification construction can be a time word, i.e, 今天, 明天, 去年, etc.
and the comment may be time expressions such as 一月, 一九七六,
星期一 etc.

As adverb 'even': time words or time expressions cannot be used in comments.

(52) 今天都星期五了。	Today is Friday already. (correct)
(53) 现在都两点了。	It's 2 o'clock already. (correct)
* 连今天都星期五了	NA

D. Comparison of Topic dou Comment le and Topic yi jing Comment le.

D.1. They both indicate to what extent the topic has been reached or has reached, and can occur with the same set of VPs:

(54) 他都睏了。 He is already sleepy.

= 他已经睏了。

(55) 今天都星期五了。 Today is already Friday.

= 今天已经星期五了。

(56) 他都来了。 He is already here.

= 他已经来了。

D.2. dou....le, although complete in structure, usually contains an implicit statement. yijing....le is complete in structure and is a straightforward statement of fact which does not contain any implicit statement.

(57) 问：“他走啦！” Q: "Has he left?"

答：1“他已经走了”老王回答心想
“他都走了你才来，有什么用！”

A^1: "He has left already." answered Lao Wang, thinking you did not show up until after he has left, what is the use!

(A clear case of dissatisfaction on the part of Lao Wang.)

答：2“他已经走了，你来晚了，
真可惜。”

A^2: "He already left. You came too late. It is a pity." Lao Wang said.

(An explicit statement of dissatisfaction.)

答：3“他已经走了”老王回答。

A^3 : "Yes." Lao Wang answered.

(A simple and matter-of-fact report.)

D.3. In terms of question-and-answer usage, dou....le is not an answer to a question but a comment on or about one's feelings, opinions, or attitude on things. yijing....le, on the other hand, may be used as an answer to a question.

(58) 问：“你多大了？”	Q: "How old are you?"
答：“我十岁了”	A: "I am ten years old."
问：“都十岁了，时候过的真快，上学了吗？	Q: "You are ten years old already! Can you imagine time passes so fast! Have you started school?"
答：“没呢！”	A: "Not yet."
问：“都十岁了，还不上学？”	Q: "You are already ten and still not in school!"
(59) 甲：“今天几号？”	A: "What is today's date?"
乙：“三十号”	B: "The 30th."
甲：“都快三十号了时候真快，你接到他的信了吗？”	A: "The 30th already? Time slips away so fast. Another month is gone. Have you received his letter?"
乙：“没呢！”	B: "Not yet."
丙：“都三十号了还没他的信，一定出事了”	C: "It is already the 30th and you did not get his letter! Something unexpected must have happened to him!"
(60) 问：“你多大了？”	Q: "How old are you?"
答：1 “四岁。”	A^1: "I am four."
答：2 “已经四岁了。”	A^2: I am four years old already.
答：3 “都四岁了。”	NA

15 The Usage of ge 各

I. Form:

A. ge M N

B. ge VP

II. Examples:

A.1.	各位朋友的协助	assistance from each friend
A.2.	各位的协助	" "
A.3.	各朋友的协助	" "
B.1.	各有所好	each has one's own likes
B.2.	各尽己任	each performs one's duty

III. Notes:

A. The word ge (各) may be used as a specifier before a M-N, M or a N. It may also be used as a pronoun immediately followed by a VP. In each case, ge refers to each individual element respectively:

(1) 各作各的事 Each person attends to her own affairs.

ge may refer to a prestated topic which is a collective group of things:

(2) 全校学生各个都需交费。 [As far as the student body of the school is concerned, each member must pay tuition]

Each and every student of the entire school must pay tuition.

B.1. In Form A, the specifier ge, either the M or the N may be omitted. Hence there are three variants:

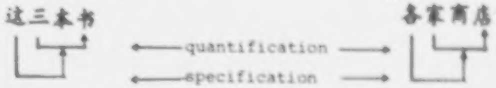
	(a) Specifier M-N	(b) Specifier M	(c) Specifier N	
(3)	各 M-N	各 M	各 N	
(4)	这个地方	这个	这地方	this place
(5)	那个地方	那个	那地方	that place
(6)	哪个地方	哪个	哪地方	which place

B.2. The differences between zhei(这), nai (那), and nei (哪) and ge are as follows:

a. While the other specifiers may precede a number, ge may not.

(7)	这几本书	these books
*	各几本书	NA

As a result, zhei, nai, and nei may refer to a quantity of more than one single item, while ge may not.



b. Furthermore, ge may be used with the adverb dou (都) to emphasize inclusiveness, as in " 各个地方都有 " 'it's available everywhere.' " 这个地方 " may only be used with dou if it is in the lian....dou or jiushi....dou.... patterns.

*	这个地方都有	NA
	连/就是这个地方都有	(It is available even in this place.)

C.1. Form B is the pronominal form of ge. The noun it replaces may sometimes be stated in the context. For instance:

(9) 這些學生各有所长。 [Of these students, each has that which he/she is good at.]

Each of these students has his or her own skills.

(10) 各自为政无法配合。 Each does it his or her own way and cannot be coordinated.

C.2. The pronominal usage of ge may replace any personal noun. For instance:

(11) (老王，老李，老张有缺点) [Lao Wang, Lao Li, and Lao Zhang have weaknesses]

→ 他們有缺点。 They have weaknesses.

→ 各有缺点。 Each and every one of them has weaknesses.

It may be used in Pronoun-de-N.

(12) (老王，老李，老张作他們自己的事) [Lao Wang, Lao Li, and Lao Zhang attend to their own business.]

→ 他們作他們自己的事。 They attend to their own business.

→ 各作各的事。 Each attends to his own business.

C.3. As a pronoun, ge has the following characteristics:

a. ge may replace personal or nonpersonal nouns (as stated in C.2.)

(13)a 這些學生 } 各有所长。 Of these students, each has his or her own merits.

(13)b 這些學校 } Of these schools, each has its merits.

b. ge may replace ge M-N (each noun), ge M-N ziji (each his or her own noun), or gezi (each one himself or herself):

(14) 各学校有各学校自己的特点
Each school has its own characteristics.

⟶ 各有各的特点

(15) 老王老李有老王老李的一套
Lao Wang and Lao Li each has his own way of doing things.

⟶ 各有各的一套

c. ge is always used as a topic, while ge de N is always used as an object of the main verb of a sentence.

(16) 各有各的本领。
Each has his own capability.

(17) 各给各的钱。
Each pays her own share.

(18) 各管各的职务。
Each takes charge of her own assignment.

C.4. ge may also be used in apportionment.

(19) 这些书各拿三本。
[Of these books, each takes three]
Each takes three of these books.

(20) 他们各捐五毛。
They each contribute 50 cents.

Sometimes the verb is omitted to avoid repetition.

(21) 他们每个人捐了多少钱?
How much did each of them contribute?

(21)a 老张捐五块，老李捐五块，
老王捐五块。
Lao Zhang contributed $5.00,
Lao Li contributed $5.00,
Lao Wang contributed $5.00.

(21)b 各捐五块。
Each contributed $5.00.

(21)c 各五块。
$5.00 each.

C.6. The underlying structure is as follows:

TOPIC	COMMENT	
	Topic	Comment
NP	ge	Verb Phrase
他们	各	捐五块

D. Comparison of ge and mei. (每)

D.1. ge may precede M-N, M, or N. mei may precede M-N, M, but not N, with the exception of the word ren (人), 'person.'

各个地方	各个	各地方
每个地方	每个	每地方

D.2. ge may be used as a pronoun but not as an adverb; mei may not be used as a pronoun, but may be used as an adverb.

Pronoun usage:

(23)	你们各买一份吧！	Why doesn't each of you buy one?
*	你们每买一份吧！	NA

Adverbial usage:

*	你们各取一次签一个名	NA
(24)	你们每取一次签一个名。	Everytime you take it out, you must sign your name.

D.3. As a specifier ge may not be followed by numbers; mei may be.

(25)	每三位客人	every three guests.
*	各三位客人	NA

Thus ge always refers to a single item (single group or individual), while mei has no such restrictions.

(26)	每位客人	= one single individual
	各位客人	=
*	各三位客人	NA
	每三位客人	= every three persons=every three individuals.

D.4. ge is never duplicated; mei may be duplicated.

* 各各地方 NA

(27) 每每給人方便 often offers conveniences to others.

D.5. ge may be used to modify a noun, ge-de-N; mei may not be used to modify a noun in the form of *mei-de-N.

(28) 各有各的工作。 Each has his or her own job.

* 每有每的工作 NA

16 The Usage of V ge X   V 个 X

I. Forms:

A. V ge quantity statement

B. V ge descriptive statement

C. V ge negative expression

II. Examples:

A.1.	住个一年半载的	to stay for a year or so
A.2.	去个一两趟再说。	We shall see after a trip or two.
B.1.	吃个饱	eat till fully satisfied
B.2.	弄个鼻青脸肿的怎么办？	[get bruised nose and swollen cheeks, what can be done] get bruised all over, then what?
C.1.	打个不停	to hit incessantly
C.2.	说个不休	to talk endlessly

III. Notes:

A.1. In each of these forms, the function of ge (个) is the same; it indicates what result the verb is to produce or to what degree the verb is to be carried out.

A.2. The difference lies in the statement which follows the V ge. The statement in Form A is one of nonspecific quantity. The statement in Form B is a description. In Form C, which occurs relatively infrequently, the statement is a negative expression.

A.3. The word ge is derived from yi ge (一个). The usage of (yi) ge converts whatever follows it into a NP, so that the whole structure is a Verb-NP.

B.1. In Form A, the statement after V-ge may be either a formulaic expression or any idiomatic nonspecific quantity statment. For example:

(1) 等个十天八天	wait for 8 to 10 days
(2) 买个两三打杯子	buy 2 or 3 dozen glasses
(3) 打个四圈八圈麻将	play 4 or 8 hands of Mah-Jongg
(4) 输个三五千块钱	lose 30 to 50 thousand dollars
(5) 静养个十天半个月	recuperate for 10 to 15 days

Expressions such as 'yi...ban...' (一 ... 半 ...), 'san...liang (三 ...两 ....), 'san...wu...' (三 ... 五 ...), etc., are all idiomatic numerals indicating nonspecific quantity.

B.2. In Form A, ge is never yi ge.

B.3. The V-ge quantity statement may be used either as the main VP or as a Topic for further comment.

(6) 过个十天八天再说。	We shall see after 8 to 10 days.
(7) 打个几圈麻将也不算不务正业。	To play a few hands of Mah-Jongg cannot be considered "ignoring one's own proper profession."
(8) 不太严重你休息个十天半个月就行了。	It is nothing serious: you need to rest for 10 to 15 days and you will be fine.

C.1. In Form B, V-ge may be followed by a simple SV or a SVP, such as:

(9) 吃个饱	eat till heartily satisfied
(10) 忘个干净	forget everything
(11) 推个清爽	shirk one's responsibility completely

or a SVP:

(12) 吃个酒足饭饱	have a satisfying meal with drinks
(13) 弄个鼻青脸肿	hurt oneself and get black and blue marks all over the face

C.2. ge converts what follows into a NP. The converted NP structurally is the Object of the verb which precedes it, but semantically it expresses the extent to which the action (verb) is to be or has been carried out.

VERB	OBJECT		
	NP		
	Nu-M	N/S	
(14) 吃	一个	饱	eat till you are full
(15) 吃	一个	酒足饭饱	[eat a case of sufficient drinks and food] Eat till you are fully satisfied.

C.3. The verb may have completion aspect marker le indicating that the action has been completed. For instance:

(14) a 吃了一个饱

(15) a 吃了一个酒足饭饱

D. Compare V de SVP and V ge SVP.

Although they appear similar on the surface in that they are both Verb-particle-SVP, V-de and V-ge contain different implications and have different semantic features.

D.1. V de SVP indicates that the SVP is either a potential or a habitual result of the verb. For instance:

吃得饱	can have enough
吃得快	eat fast (always)

On the other hand, V ge SVP refers to a single event and the SVP indicates the projected extent or result of the verb. For instance:

(16)a 明天玩个痛快！ Enjoy it thoroughly tomorrow!

(16)b 昨天玩了个痛快。 We enjoyed it thoroughly yesterday.

D.2. V de SVP has a negative version in which de is replaced by bu (不).

(17)a 我作得完 I can get it done.

(17)b 我作不完 I can not get it done.

V ge SVP is always affirmative, though the SVP may be stated negatively.

° 我不吃个一干二净 °(I refuse to consume all of it)= categorical denial

° 我没吃个一干二净 °(I did not consume all of it)= categorical denial

(18) 他吃个不亦乐乎。 He ate till he was full.

D.3. In V de SVP, de is a bound form suffixed to the verb; in V ge SVP ge is part of the NP--since ge is a measure for a NP and its function here is to convert the SVP into a NP.

D.4. Since the implication of V de SVP is "habitual" or "potential" V de SVP does not have completion form.

*他吃了得完 or *他吃得完了

The implication of V ge SVP is that of a basic Verb Object structure, therefore it may have a completion version:

(19)a 玩个痛快 Have a good time.

(19)b 玩了个痛快 had a good time

D.5. In summary, the above comparison is summarized in the following chart.

	V de SVP	V ge SVP
habitual	+	-
potential	+	+
completion aspect	-	+
negation	+	-
affixation	to the preceding verb	to the following noun

E.1. In Form C, V-ge is followed by a restricted number of negative expressions: they are 不停 , 不止 , and 不休 , which indicate the endless and interminable performance of an action. For instance:

(20)a V 个不停

(20)b V 个不止 } endlessly V

(20)c V 个不休

E.2. In this usage, Form C, the word ge is never replaced by yi ge and may not be omitted when the verb is single syllable:

(21) 真可笑,大家笑个不停。 That was truly funny: everybody laughed endlessly.

* 真可笑大家笑一个不停 NA

E.3. The verb in V ge Neg VP is always single syllable. Conversely, when the verb is not a single syllable word, the word ge must be dropped.

(22)a 别招他，他会骂个不停。 } Do not provoke him. Otherwise, he would yell at you forever.

(22)b 别招他，他会咒骂不停

17 The Usage of gei Pron lai ge VP/S   给 Pron 来个 VP/S

I. Form:

NP^1 gei NP^2 lai ge VP/S

II. Examples:

A.	你给他来个不理。	[You give him no response.] Don't answer him.
B.	他给你来个一问三不知。	[He gives you three I-don't-knows to each question.] He gives you a totally ignorant response.
C.	他给你来个混水摸鱼。	[He gives you catching fish in muddy water treatment.] He takes advantage of your situation.

III. Notes:

A. The form NP^1 gei NP^2 lai ge VP/S indicates an attitude, a mode of behavior, or a reaction of NP^1 to NP^2. The reaction, attitude, or mode is expressed by ge VP/S.

B.1. The NP^1 in this structure may be either a personal noun or one which may be personified:

(1)	老师们给学校当局来了个不闻不问我行我素。	Teachers show the school authority the attitude of detachment and noninvolvement.
(2)	学校当局给学生代表来了一个先礼后兵。	The authority gave the student representatives the treatment of "xian li hou bing."

Lao shi in (1) and xuexiao dang ju in (2) are personal and personified nouns, respectively.

B.2. The NP^2 in this structure may be a nonpersonal noun, but NP^1 may not be.

(3)	老王给校方的通知来个不理。	Wang totally ignored the notice from the school.

(4) 司考特给最佳男主角金像奖 来了个不接受。	George C. Scott's reaction to his Oscar award as best actor was not to accept it.

B.3. lai is the main verb in this structure and lai-NP is the main VP of this structure:

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
		CO-VP	M-VP
	NP^1	gei NP^2	lai NP
(5)	你	给他	来个不理

However, verb lai may be omitted. When it is omitted, gei becomes the main verb and the resulting structure becomes gei with direct and indirect objects:

	TOPIC	COMMENT		
		Main Verb	Indirect Object	Direct Object
	NP^1	gei	NP^2	NP^3
(5)a	你	给	他	个不理

B.4. The measure word ge is abbreviated version of yige, in the sense of 'a certain attitude,' 'a particular behavior.' or 'a certain reaction.' The function of (yi)ge is to convert whatever follows it into a NP object of lai, whether it is a verb, a verb phrase, or a sentence. Therefore, ge is not an optional feature.

B.5. The expressions following ge may be any of the following:

(5)a 你给他来个穷横 SV

(5)b 你给他来个装腔作势 VP (V^1O^1-V^2O^2)

(5)c 你给他来个趁火打劫 VP

(5)d 你给他来个房顶开门六亲不认 sentence

Any of these expressions may be used after the measure word ge; affirmative or negative, SVP or FVP, simple or complex, but the phrase must describe the attitude, behavior, or reaction of NP^1 to NP^2.

B.6. As its M-VP, lai may have a completion aspect marker:

(5)b 你给他来了不理

C. Compare this form with other similar structures:

C.1. Topic gei NP^1 lai ge NP^2 (--VP/S) and Topic gei NP^1 Verb Nu-M-NP^2.

C.1.a. When the main verb is lai this structure means that the Topic NP expresses a certain kind of attitude or reaction (NP^3) to NP^2. When the main verb is not lai, the structure means that the Topic (NP^1) is doing something (Verb NP^3) for the sake of or for the benefit of NP^2. This is the most common usage of gei as a co-verb.

	TOPIC (NP^1)	gei NP^2 Verb NP^3	
(5)	你	给他来个不理	
(7)	我	给他买个帽子	I buy a hat for him.

C.1.b. In the structure where the main verb is lai, lai may be omitted. The structure is thus abbreviated to NP gei NP (lai) ge VP/S. In a similar structure, where the main verb is not lai, no segment of the structure may be omitted without changing the original meaning:

(5) 你给他来个不理。 Don't answer him.

(5) 你给他( )个不理。 (same)

(7) 我给他买个帽子。 I buy a hat for him.

(7)a 我给他( )个帽子。 I give him a hat.

C.1.c. In the structure where the attitude of the topic is indicated, the object of the main verb lai is a NP converted from a VP or an S. In the other structure the object of the main verb must be a NP:

(5) 你给他来个不理。

(7) 我给他买个帽子。

C.1.d. The number used in the form indicating attitude is always yi (一), 'one,' which is often omitted. The number in the other form is unrestricted.

*(5)c 你给他来两个不理 NA

(7)b 我给他买两个帽子。 I get him two hats.

C.1.e. The measure in the attitude pattern is always ge. While in the other pattern, the measure may be whatever is appropriate from the following noun.

*(5)d 你给他来次不理 NA

(7)c 我给他买两頂帽子。

(8) 我给他找一本书。 I will find him a hat.

C.2. Other expressions involving the use of gei include the following:

(9) 你给我吃药！ You take the medicine!

(10) 我给你吃药！ I will take the medicine!

The former is strictly imperative and the latter is a declarative sentence expressing desperation.

C.2.a. In the imperative usage as well as the expression of desperation, the CO-VP 'gei NP' may be omitted.

(9)a 你吃药！

(10)a 我吃药！

But 'gei NP' expressing attitude cannot be omitted.

C.2.b. The NP^2 in gei NP^2 for the imperative usage must be first person and the Topic NP^1 in the form for the declaration of desperation must be first person.

°(9)b 你给他吃药 NA °(You feed him medicine.)

°(10)b 他给你吃药 NA °(He feeds you medicine.)

There are no such restrictions for the attitude pattern:

(11) 老三给老四(来)个不理

C.2.c. The expression as in (9) is strictly imperative, in (10) is declaration of desperation, but in (5) may either be imperative or declarative, but never desperation.

C.3. In summary, there are four expressions in the structure NP^1 gei NP^2 M-VP, as shown in the following chart:

	TOPIC	COMMENT		
	NP^1	gei NP^2	VP	
(9)	ni	gei wo	chi yao	You take the medicine!
(10)	wo	gei ni	chi yao	I take the medicine!
(12)	ni	gei wo	mai shu	You buy books for me.
(5)	wo	gei ta	lai ge bu li	I ignore him!

Their similarities and differences are:

Illustration	(9)	(10)	(12)	(5)
Features	Strictly imperative	Declarative of desperation	Imperative/ declarative	Imperative/ declarative
	gei NP^2 optional	gei NP^2 optional	gei NP^2 not optional	gei NP^2 not optional
	NP^2 must be first person	NP^2 must be second per.	NP^2 unrestricted	NP^2 unrestricted
	NP^2 not the beneficiary	NP^2 not the beneficiary	NP^2 is beneficiary of VP	NP^2 not the beneficiary
	NP^2 issues order for NP^1	NP^2 issues order for NP^1		NP^2 is target of NP^1's attitude
	NP^1 is ordered by NP^2 to do action(VP). NP^1 is second person.	NP^1 ordered by NP^2 to do action(VP). NP^1 is 1st person.	NP^1 is actor, NP^2 is recipient or beneficiary of NP^1's action.	NP^1 is actor who shows attitude, reaction to certain situation.

18 The Usage of gei VP 給 VP

I. Form:

Topic gei VP

II. Examples:

A.	你给倒去。	You go to pour it.
B.	他挣来钱能一下子都给喝了酒。	If he does earn some money, he would spend it all on liquor.
C.	黑旋风给逮着了。	Hei Xuan Feng has been captured.

III. Notes:

A. Generally speaking, the verb gei in addition to being used as the main verb of a sentence may be used in the following three cases:

a. CO-VP: Topic gei NP VP:

(1) 我给你画。 I will draw for you,

b. ba construction: Topic ba NP gei VP:

(2) 我把钱给丢了。 I lost the money.

c. jiao/rang pattern: Topic jiao/rang NP gei VP:

(3) 老李叫老王给关起来了。 Lao Li has been locked up by Lao Wang.

However, in all three cases when the NP is understood or mentioned in the immediate context, it may be omitted, as shown below:

(a) Topic gei (NP)VP → Topic gei VP

(b) Topic (ba NP) gei NP → Topic gei VP

(c) Topic (jiao/rang NP) gei VP→Topic gei VP

The end result in all three cases of omission is identical: Topic gei VP. Thus, in a given context, these three usages of Topic *gei* VP must be distinguished.

B.1. In the case of (a), the CO-VP usage of *gei*, the omitted NP is the Indirect Object (IO).

(4) 我给(你)倒去。 I will pour it out (for you).

(5) 劳你驾给(冯狗子)找剃头的老王去。 May I trouble you to go and fetch Barber Wang Wu (for him)?

(6) 我可没工夫给(您)热二回。 I won't have time to heat it for the second time (for you).

One of the conditions for the omission of the IO is that it must be clear from the context. For instance, the context of (4) is the following:

(4)a "四嫂您可别叫妞子去臭沟…… "Si Sao, you must not send Niuzi to the (open) sewer..."

……妞子，来,给我……我给倒去"。 Niuzi, come, give it to me...I will go to pour it out."

Here it is apparent that *wo gei dau qu* is a shortened version of *wo gei Niuzi dao qu*. "I will, on Niuzi's behalf, pour it out."

The context for (5) is the following:

(5)a 冯狗予折了腿，老赵向刘掌柜："劳您驾，给找剃头的王五去，王五会接骨。" Feng Gouzi broke his leg. Lao Zhao (asking Manager Liu): "May I trouble you to fetch Barber Wang Wu? He (Wang Wu) knows how to fix broken legs."

Here, *gei zhao* is *gei Feng Guozi zhao*, to go fetch the barber who is also a medical man for the injured Guozi.

The context for (6) is the following:

(6)a	女儿："饭好了，酒热了，不会享福！"	Daughter: "The food is ready, the wine is heated, but you don't know how to enjoy this good service!"
	父亲："我得把院子帚干净才吃得下。"	Father: "I must clean the yard before I can sit down to eat with peace of mind."
	女儿："饭凉了，我可没工夫给热二回！"	Daughter: "If the food (and wine) get cold, I won't have time to heat them for the second time."

Here the daughter prepared a nice hot meal for her father, yet her father would have preferred to clean the yard before eating his supper. The daughter objected to his idea for fear the food would get cold and she would not have time to reheat everything once again for her father. Therefore, gei re er hui refers to gei nin--the father--re er hui.

B.2. Although the omitted NP in the above illustrations is the object of the verb gei in CO-VP usage, not all NP in such occurrences may be omitted. For instance, in the following cases, the NP may not be omitted:

a. Imperative usage of CO-VP gei wo:

(7) 你给我滚出去！ You get out of here!

b. Declarative-expression of desperation:

(8) 我给你吃！ I will eat!

B.3. The NP is often dropped when it shares the same reference with the topic:

(9) 虎妞请冯先生给写几个字。 Huniu requested Mr. Feng to write a few characters.

Here the omitted NP after the verb gei is either Huniu or ta as shown below:

(9)a 虎妞……给虎妞写几个字

(9)b 虎妞……给她写几个字

Expression (9)a is NA. Expression (9)b is acceptable but is not as compact as (8), and thereby not as powerful an expression.

C.1. In the case of (b), the ba construction, III-A-b, the omitted NP is the object of the main verb in a sentence:

(10)	要是他挣点钱他会(把挣的钱)都给输光了。	If he does earn some money, he would lose it--the money he earned--all at gambling.
(11)	他(把车)给撞的稀烂。	He smashed it--the car--beyond repair.
(12)	他(把信封上的地址)给写错了。	He wrote it--the address on the envelope--wrong.

C.2. Note that the omitted segment is not the NP alone, but the "ba-NP" phrase.

C.3. In the case of (b), the NP object of the main verb may have been transposed to a topic position following the procedure shown below:

(10)a 挣的钱他给输光了。

(11)a 车他给撞的稀烂。

(12)a 信封上的地址他给写错了。

The structural diagram is as follows:

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
		Topic	Comment
(10)a	挣的钱	他	都给输光了
(11)a	车	他	给撞的稀烂
(12)a	信封上的地址	他	给写错了

C.4. It must be noted that the word gei is indispensable in (10), (11), and (12), but not in (10)a, b, (11)a, b, and (12)a, b. That is:

Topic gei VP

a. Topic ba-NP (gei) VP

b. NP Topic (gei) VP

For instance:

(13)	老刘：“我昨天拿家来给的钱呢？ 刘太太：“他都给输光了！”	Lao Liu: "What happened to the money I brought home yesterday for John?" Mrs. Liu: "He lost it all at gambling!"
(14)	老王：“你知道吗？他又一文不名了，昨天晚上全(给)输光了！”	Lao Wang: "Do you know why he is penniless again? He lost all the money he earned at gambling last night!"
(15)	老李：“他辛辛苦苦挣来的钱昨天晚上全(给)输光了！”	Lao Li: He lost all his hard earned money at gambling last night!"

D.1. In the case of (c), where it is used with jiao/rang, the word gei is used in a pattern often identified as "passive voice." It is a pattern in which a particular action is directed or applied to someone or something by some other person or some other things.

In this pattern the object or the recipient of action is the topic, the actor is introduced by jiao or rang and the action is introduced by gei. For example:

	TOPIC	COMMENT		
	NP^1	*jiao*/*rang* NP^2	*gei* VP	
	Object	*jiao*/*rang* Actor	*gei* Action	
(5)	黑旋风	叫国军	给逮着了	Hei Xuan Feng has been captured by the Army.
(16)	房子	叫河水	给淹了	The house was flooded by the river.
(17)	敌人	叫我方陆军	给歼灭了	The enemy was smashed by our infantry.

D.2. The NP^2 may be understood or stated in the context. In the case of (c) the omitted NP is not the Actor, nor is the object, as in the case of (a) CO-VP construction and (b) *ba* construction. Furthermore, the omitteo segment is not the NP alone but the *jiao*/*rang* NP phrase.

(5) a 黑旋风(叫国军) 给逮着了。

(16) a 房子 (叫河水) 给淹了。

(17) a 敌人 (叫我方陆军) 给歼灭了。

E. In summary, the form Topic *gei* VP may be the end result of three different derivations.

19 The Usage of Pron^1 gei Pron^2 VP 给

I. Forms:

A. ni gei wo VP!

B. wo gei ni VP!

C. Pron^1 gei Pron^2 VP!

II. Examples:

A.1.	我的小姑奶奶，你给我进去吧！	My dearest, won't you go inside!
A.2.	你给我过来！	You get over here!
A.3.	不喝就给我滚出去！	If you won't drink it, then get out of here!
B.1.	我已经穿的够多的了，你还叫我穿，好我给你穿！	I have already put on a lot of warm clothing, but if you want me to put on more, I will do it!
B.2.	我告诉你去是没用的，你非叫我去不可，我就给你去！	I told you it is useless to go there. But if you insist, I will go!
C.1.	我给你买书。	I will buy a book for you.
C.2.	你给我买书。	You will buy books for me.
C.3.	老大给老二买书。	Lao Da buys books for Lao Er.

III. Notes:

A.1. gei Pron in a sentence structure may have various usages. The most familiar ones are:

a. gei Pron NP:

(1) 我给你钱。 I give you money.

b. gei Pron VP:

(2) 我给你写信。 I write you a letter.

(3) 我给你做饭。 I cook for you.

Whether gei Pron is followed by a NP or a VP, gei Pron is an inherent part of the structure and its semantic function remains constant.

A.2. However, the usage presented here is similar only in appearance to (a) and (b) above.

Pron^1 gei Pron^2 VP! means Pron^1 performs an action (VP) under the order of Pron^2 or at the request of Pron^2. In this structure gei Pron^2 is optional.

B.1. In Form A, Pron^2 is restricted to the first person.

(4) 给我滚出去！ (You) Get out of here!

(5) 给我们滚出去！

The speaker is therefore the one who gives the order or makes the request. The order or request to do a particular action (VP) is directed to Pron^1.

B.2. Pron^1, the one who receives the order, can be second person, either singular or plural. As in other imperatives, the second person pronoun is often omitted.

(ni/nimen) gei wo/women VP!

Such an order may be given to the second person but directed to a third person, for example:

(ni/nimen) jiao/rang ta/tamen gei wo/women VP!

(6) 让/叫他给我出去! Ask him to get out of here.

(7) 让/叫他给我进来! Ask him to come in!

(8) 让/叫他们给我穿规矩点! Ask them to dress properly!

(9) 让/叫他们给我们站着! Ask them to keep standing up!

B.3. The VP is always affirmative and may be either transitive VP or intransitive VP, such as: guanshang (关上) 'to close,' tuichuqu (推出去) 'to push out,' zhuzui (住嘴) 'to shut up,' wanghou zhan (往后站) 'to stand back/to back up.'

B.4. Adverbs may be used before gei Pron:

(10)a 你得给我出来! Come out here!

(10)b 你们都给我出来!

Negative command bie (别) may also be used:

(11)a 你别给我忘了! Don't you forget it!

(11)b 你别给我胡说八道了! Don't you talk nonsense!

B.5. This structure usually consists of the entire range of imperative expressions from earnest persuasion to irrevocable order:

(12)a 小姐，您就给我进去吧! You'd better go inside, miss!

(12)b 你们都得给我规矩些! You'd better all behave yourselves!

(12)c 给我滚! Get out!

B.6. In all these expressions, gei wo is optional. However, the difference between Pron^1 gei Pron^2 VP! and Pron^1 VP! is that the former indicates the speaker's strong determination in enforcing the command, while the latter is merely a command.

Compare the normal command expression wo jiao ni gun! and this special imperative form ni gei wo gun! The former may be interpreted as:

(13)a 我叫你滾! I ask you to leave! (not stay)

(13)b 我叫你滾! I ask you to leave. (not anyone else)

(13)c 我叫你滾! I do ask you to leave. (I did not inquire if you would leave)

(13)d 我叫你滾! I ask you to leave. (no one else)

While the latter ni gei wo gun! can be interpreted as:

(14)a 你給我滾! You get out!

(14)b 你給我滾! You get out!

The former depends on the vocal stress to indicate which of the words is being emphasized. In the latter (14a, 14b), the stress is implicit in the structure.

Furthermore, the former leaves room for the listener to ponder how seriously the command is intended while the latter is unquestionably in earnest.

B.7. To review, Form A is therefore an imperative structure, where Pron^2 is the one giving the orders and Pron^1 is the Actor of VP in compliance with Pron^2's order. The meaning of gei is different from the usual co-verbial usage of gei 'for the sake of' or 'for the benefit of.'

C.1. In Form B, Pron^2 is restricted to second person, singular or plural:

(15)a	我给你签字！	I will sign it!
(15)b	我给你们签字！	I will sign it!

Pron^1 is restricted to first person, usually singular, but sometimes plural.

(16)	我吃药了，你要不信，我再给你吃！	I took my medicine. If you don't believe me, I will take it again! (Just to satisfy you)
(17)	我们都签字了你一定要我们当你面签， 好！我们再给你签一回！	We all signed. If you insist that we should sign before you, we will sign it again!

C.2. Negatives are not used with gei Pron VP. Adverbs may be used before gei Pron or VP:

(18)a	我立刻给你办。	I will do it for you immediately.
(18)b	我给你再干。	I will do it for you again.
(18)c	我们都给你干。	We will all do it for you.

C.3. Form B is not an imperative structure. In Form B, Pron^1 is making a concession to agree to do the action of VP under pressure or coercion from Pron^2. Such a concession, as illustrated in II-B-1, II-B-2, may indicate a desperate effort to please Pron^2. For instance:

(19)	我知道你愿意我离开你。好！明天我就 给你走！走的远远的！	I know you want me to leave you. Fine. I will leave you tomorrow and I will go far away.
(20)	一年到头都得喝这苦药，今天大过年的你们 还逼着我喝，好！喝！我给你们喝！……..	"Everyday I have to take this bitter herb medicine. Even today--New Year's Day! You people won't let me skip it. Fine. I'll drink it. I will drink it (as you ordered)...."

C.4. Although gei ni is optional, a comparison between Pron^1 gei ni VP and Pron^1 VP shows the semantic weight of gei ni in this structure.

(21)a 好！你逼我，我就走！ Fine. If you force me I will leave.

(21)b 好！你逼我，我就给你走！ Fine. You force me to leave, but I am leaving against my own will.

Thus Pron^1 gei ni VP expresses not just what Pron^1 is going to do (VP), but also expresses that Pron^1 is in a helpless situation brought on by Pron^2.

D.1. Form C is the most frequent and most familiar usage of gei Pron VP, referred to in II-A-1. It generally occurs in the structure Pron^1 gei Pron^2 VP meaning 'Pron^1 does VP for the sake of/for the benefit of Pron^2.'

(22)a 我给他写信。 I write him a letter. I write a letter for him.

(22)b 他给你做饭。 He will cook for you.

Where the Pron^1 is the Actor of VP and the action is carried out for the benefit of Pron^2:

ACTOR/BENEFACTOR	gei	OBJECT^1/BENEFICIARY	NP/VP
我	给	你	钱
我	给	你	写信
我	给	你	做饭

D.2. This usage of gei is not restricted to pronouns. For instance:

(23) 哥伦比亚大学给纽约市训練科技人員。 Columbia University trains scientists for New York City.

E. Comparison between Forms A, ni gei wo VP, B, wo gei ni VP, and C, Pron gei Pron VP:

E.1. In all three forms, Pron^1 is the ACTOR of VP, and is to perform the action of VP for the benefit of Pron^2, either willingly or unwillingly.

E.2. In Form A, Pron^1 is ordered to do the action of VP by Pron^2. In Form B, Pron^1 is doing the action of VP under pressure from the expectation of Pron^2. In Form C, Pron^1 is neither pressured nor ordered by Pron^2. Pron^1 is doing the action of VP for the benefit of Pron^2.

E.3. In Form A, Pron^2 is the one giving the orders. In Form B, Pron^2 is the one exerting pressure. In Form C, Pron^2 is the beneficiary of Pron^1's action (VP).

E.4. In Form A, Pron^1 can be second and third, Pron^2 must be first person. In Form B, Pron^1 must be first person and Pron^2 must be second person. In Form C, neither Pron^1 or Pron^2 has any restrictions. Furthermore, they may be nonpersonal nouns.

E.5. In Form A, the message is a command. In Form B, the message is an act of concession or a desperate effort in a desperate situation. In Form C, the message is a matter of fact statement of a benefactor-beneficiary situation.

E.6. In Form A, the negative imperative *bie* may be used before *gei* Pron^2. In Form B, no negatives may be used. In Form C, *bu* (不), *mei* (沒), and *bie* may all be used.

20 The Usage of Hao VP 好

I. Form:

Topic hao Comment

II. Examples:

A.	我开着门你们好进来。	I will keep the door open so you people can come in.
B.	你先说，说完好忙你的去。	You report first. After you finish you can go attend to your work.
C.	把棉衣服拆洗拆洗天冷了好穿。	Clean these padded garments, so when the climate changes, you will have something to wear.

III. Notes:

A. Here hao (好) is used as an adverb and occurs before a VP. In this usage it means "so as to be able to" or "so that." In structural terms, it links two otherwise independent units and thereby indicates a cause-effect or action-purpose relationship between the two components.

Therefore, the above examples illustrate that something is taking place (component I) in order to facilitate the occurrence or performance of something else (component II).

B.1. The structure Topic hao Comment is therefore always used as a second component in a compound sentence.

	COMPONENT I	COMPONENT II
(1)	我开着门	你们好进来
(2)	你先说	说完好忙你的去
(3)	把棉衣服拆洗拆洗	天冷了好穿

B.2. The components may be in the following forms:

(a) T-C Construction 我开着门，你们进来

(b) Topic-omitted Construction: 说完忙你的去

B.3. As long as one component is a facilitating factor of the other, they may be linked by hao to form a compound sentence as illustrated above. For instance: ta bu chu qu (他不出去) and ta deng ni (他等你) may be linked by hao as in:

(4) 他不出去，他好等你。 He is not going out, so he can wait for you.

ta kai che (他开车) and ni xiuxi (你休息), as in:

(5) 他开车，你好休息。 He is going to drive, so you may rest.

gaijin jiaocai (改进教材) and tigao xuexi xingqu (提高学习兴趣), as in:

(6) 改进教材，好提高学习兴趣。 To revise and improve teaching materials so as to maintain and improve learning interest.

B.4. When both components share a common topic as in (4), the repeated topic is often omitted.

(4) 他不出去( )好等你。

The topic is often understood from the context.

(7) 把帐算清好谈分红的事。 (We) should clear the account so (we) can discuss profit-sharing matters.

B.5. The two components are not necessarily both affirmative or both negative.

(4) 他不出去好等你。 neg-aff.

(5) 他开车你好休息。 aff-aff.

(8) 你别给他很多钱，他好不乱花。 neg-neg.

Do not give him a lot of money so that he will not squander it away.

(9) 他昨天准备了一晚上，到时候他好不用临时着急。 aff-neg.

Last night he prepared the whole night for it, so he does not have to worry about anything when the time comes today.

B.6. Component I may be in the habitual present, future, or completion aspects but component II is always stated in the incompletion aspect. However, while the form of component II remains in an incomplete aspect its time element is determined by the content of component I. For instance, hao na waikuai (好拿外快) 'so as to get extra pay' in the following sentences remains in the same form but has three different time references because of differences in the preceding component I:

(10) 他三月加了班，上月好拿外快。 He worked overtime in March, so he could get extra pay last month.

(11) 他上月加了班，这个月好拿外快。 He worked overtime last month, so he could get extra pay this month.

(12) 他这月加班，下月好拿外快。 He works overtime this month, so he can get extra pay next month.

C. The function of adverb hao is to bring out the cause-effect or action-purpose relation between two components, but it is not always interchangeable with other adverbs for similar functions.

C.1. Compare hao and weideshi (为的是).

C.1.a. hao must occur before a VP; weideshi may occur before a VP, a T-C, or a NP.

(13) 我开车 你好休息。 I will drive so that you can rest.

(14) 我开车 为的是让你休息。 "

(15) 我开车 为的是你得休息。 "

(16) 我开车 为的是你。 I will drive for your sake.

C.1.b. hao may occur only in Component II of a compound sentence of cause-effect or action-pupose relationship.

weideshi may also occur in Component I of a compound sentence of such relationship.

	COMPONENT I	COMPONENT II
(13)	我开车	你好休息
*	你好休息	我开车
(14)a	为的是让你休息	所以我开车
(15)	为的是你得休息	所以我开车
(16)a	为的是你	所以我开车

C.1.c. In a compound sentence, hao indicates the component in which it occurs (Component II) is the intended result or purpose of the other component. For instance:

(13) 我开车 你好休息。

C.1.d. *hao* may occur in Component II with a Topic or subject matter different from that of Component I.

(13) 我开车 你好休息。

weideshi always implies that the Topic or subject matter is the same in both components. There is no other difference in meaning between the structure with *hao* and that with *weideshi*.

(14) 我开车为的是让你休息

= 我开车(我)为的是让你休息

(15) 我开车为的是你得休息

= 我开车(我)为的是你得休息

(16) 我开车为的是你

= 我开车(我)为的是你

C.2. Compare *hao* with *caineng* (才能)

C.2.a. Structurally both *hao* and *caineng* are used before a comment or a VP:

(1) 我开着门你们好进来

(1)a 我开着门你们才能进来

(2) ………说完好忙你的去

(2)a ………说完才能忙你的去

(3) ……天冷了好穿

(3)a ……天冷了才能穿

C.2.b. Semantically, hao indicates a possible or potential result of Component I. caineng indicates the preceding statement is a necessary prerequisite for producing certain expected results (in Component II).

C.2.c. Therefore, in certain cases hao and caineng are not interchangeable.

(17) 我想买一个录音机好录音。 I am planning to get a tape recorder so as to make recordings.

(18) 我准备补习英文好进美国的学校。 He plans to brush up on his English so as to enter an American school.

(19) 上边的命令考试及格才能升班。 We have orders that only those who pass the examination can be promoted.

(20) 要是他不去，你才能去。 If he declines to go, then you can go.

In these illustrations, hao and caineng are not interchangeable.

Therefore, while caineng is used strictly in Component II of a conditional construction, hao may be used in any construction that indicates a cause-effect relationship or an action-purpose relationship.

C.3. Compare hao and lai...lai (来 ... 来) and/or qu...qu (去 ... 去).

C.3.a. Both are used to indicate purpose:

(21) 我到 纽约 来好念书。 I come to New York so as to study.

(22) 我到 纽约 来念书来。 " "

(23) 我开车好把东西带去。 I will drive so as to bring all the things with me.

(24) 我开车去把东西带去。 " "

C.3.b. *hao* is an adverb; *lai*...*lai* or *qu*...*qu* is a disjunctive verb phrase. Therefore, structures which may be joined by *hao* are unlimited (III-c.1.b) while structures which may be joined by *lai*...*lai* or *qu*...*qu* are restricted in the following ways:

C.3.b.1. The two structures must share a common topic--a personal noun or pronoun.

' 我去 ' + ' 我念书 ' = 我去念书去

C.3.b.2. One of the two structures must have *lai* or *qu*, and thus must involve "going" or "coming"

' 我做 ' + ' 我给你 ' = * 我/来去做给你来/去

C.3.b.3. Component II may not be negative.

' 我去 ' + ' 我不念书 ' = * 我去不念书去

21 The Usage of VP/S haole   VP/S 好了

I. Forms:

A. VP - haole

B. S - haole

II. Examples:

A.1.	你既不喜欢作饭，这样好了，我做饭你洗碗	Since you do not like to cook, how about this--I will cook and you will wash dishes.
A.2.	这么办好了，我把我的书借给你用。	How about doing it this way? I will loan you my book.
B.1.	我把我的书借给你好了。	How about letting me (or Why don't I) loan you my book?
B.2.	你既不喜欢做饭，我做饭你洗碗好了。	Since you do not like to cook, how about letting me cook (or why don't I cook) and you wash the dishes?

III. Notes:

A.1. The form haole (好了) may be used in many different ways. The discussion here will concentrate on two of the Bound Form usages: Verb Phrase - haole and T-C construction - haole.

A.2. As a bound form, haole suffixed to a Verb phrase (VP) or a Topic-Comment construction (S) indicates a suggestion and therefore for this discussion will be designated as a suggestion marker.

A.3. Briefly, when haole is suffixed to a phrase, it converts the phrase into a suggestion introducer. When haole is suffixed to a T-C it converts the T-C from a statement of fact to a statement of suggestion.

B.1. In Form A, the phrase is restricted to the following:

(1) 这/那么办好了………

(2) 这/那么着好了……… How about this/that way...?

(3) 这/那样好了………

B.2. An important characteristic of haole is that it must occur with another sentence. Expressions of the type with haole implicitly indicate that there is a suggestion, but that the suggestion is not explicitly stated in the phrase to which haole is suffixed.

Therefore, these pnrases are logically incomplete in themselves and the missing suggestion must be presented in a separate statement, which always follows the phrase containing haole. As such, this usage of haole must be a part of a compound sentence.

(4) 那么着好了，你把钱给我我替你买 How about doing it another way--you give me the money and I will buy it for you.

In the above example, 那么着好了 is the introducer of the suggestion. 你把钱给我我替你买 is the statement of suggestion.

It is important to note that if the normal order is reversed, and the suggestion precedes the introducer, the structure becomes NA. For instance:

* 你把钱给我我替你买那么着好了 NA

C.1. In Form B, T-C construction haole, the sentence is restricted to a statement of suggestion. Therefore, certain types of constructions are automatically excluded, namely, Topic-Description, Topic-Existence, Topic-Identification with EV shi (是) and xing (姓), and Topic-Function with Aux VP and Resultative Verbs.

Examples of types of constructions which may be suffixed with haole and converted from statements of fact to statements of suggestion are listed below:

(5) 你在家好了？ How about if you stay home? (Topic-Location)

(6) 你吃好了？ How about if you eat? (Topic-Function)

(7) 你开出去好了？ How about if you drive out there? (Topic-Function with complex verb)

(8) 你替我买好了？ How about if you would buy it for me? (Topic-Function with CO-VP)

(9) 你当主角好了？ How about if you take the leading role? (Topic-Identification)

(10) 你去主角的父亲好了？ How about if you would take the part of the hero's father? (Topic-Identification)

C.2. The T-C construction to which haole is suffixed can be either simple or compound, affirmative or negative. In a compound sentence, haole is suffixed to the last component. For example:

(11) 你来。 → 你来好了？ How about coming yourself? (Simple S, affirmative)

(12) 你不要。 → 你不要好了？ How about refusing it? (Simple S, negative)

(13) 你去我也去 → 你去我也去好了？ How about if I join you, when you go? (Compound S, affirmative)

(14)a 你不买他也不买 → 你不买他也不买好了？ How about letting him refuse to buy it, if you do not buy it? (Compound S, affirmative)

(14)b 他不给你，你也不给他 → 他不给你，你也不给他好了？ If he doesn't give it to you, how about your not giving it to him?

The T-C construction may be declarative or imperative, but not narrative.

(15) 我明天去 → 我明天去好了？ (declarative) How about my going tomorrow? Why don't I go tomorrow?

(16) 你在这儿等 → 你在这儿等好了？ (imperative) How about waiting here? Why don't you wait here?

(17) 他写得清楚 (narrative) He writes neatly.

→ * 他写得清楚好了 NA

(18) 他作事规矩 (narrative) He does things properly.

→ * 他作事规矩好了 NA

C.3. The T-C construction - haole may be followed by a "?" or "." depending on the tone of voice of the speaker. In other words, it may be a suggestion (for someone) to follow, or a suggestion (for someone) to consider. It may be translated as "I suggest that you...do such and such," or "Would it be all right if...?"

D. Comparison of Form A and Form B:

Form A is not an independent statement, and is always followed by a comma and a statement of suggestion; therefore it is always part of a compound sentence. Form B is an independent statement and is the suggestion itself, and it is a complete sentence structure, therefore may be followed by a period or a question mark. It may also become part of a compound sentence.

Both Form A and Form B may be followed by a Question Phrase (i.e., V-bu-V-type, V-ma type) but may not be directly followed by a question particle:

(19)	这么着好了，　你在家我去，好不好？ 行不行？ 成不成？	How about this way--you stay home, I go. Would it be all right?
(20)	你在家我去好了，成吗？	How about you stay home and I go? Would it suit you?
*	你在家我去好了吗？	NA
*	你在家我去好了吧！	NA

Those Question Phrases, by their nature, are constructions separate from the Phrase haole and from the T-C construction haole.

E. Comparison of haole and ba (吧):

E.1. By suffixing either haole or ba to a phrase as in Form A or a T-C construction as in Form B, a suggestion is indicated. But haole may be suffixed either to a negative or an affirmative sentence, while ba may only be suffixed to an affirmative sentence to mean a suggestion.

(21)	你不去好了？	How about your not going? (correct)
°	你不去吧	NA °(You are not going, aren't you?)

E.2. When ba is suffixed to a negative sentence it functions as a particle for confirmation. It indicated a question, not a suggestion.

(22)	你不去吧？	You are not going, I presume? You are not going, aren't you? You are not going, am I right?

E.3. When haole is suffixed to a negative sentence, it maintains its function as a marker of suggestion. The key distinction between haole in an affirmative and in a negative statement is as follows:

Affirmative statement - haole: It opens the topic for discussion or further negotiation.

Negative statement - haole: It offers an alternative, sometimes the only alternative, not anticipating further discussion.

For example:

(23) 我们一块去好了？ How about our going together? (What do you think? How about it?)

(24) 你不理他好了？ (If he does not like you), How about ignoring him? (Will that solve the problem?)

22 The Usage of jian X jiu Y 見 X 就 Y

I. Forms:

A. jian X jiu Y

B. jian X, jiu Y

II. Examples:

A.1.	見人就笑	Whenever she sees someone, she smiles.
A.2.	見錢就拿	Whenever there is money, he takes it.
A.3.	見糖就吃	Whenever there is candy, he eats it.
A.4.	見烟就抽	Whenever there are cigarettes, he smokes them.
B.1.	見主人不添酒就敲着桌子喊道： “添酒来！”	Seeing that the manager did not bring more wine, he tapped the table and shouted: "Bring more wine!"
B.2.	見老虎已經打死就想把它拖下山去。	Seeing that the tiger had already been killed, he attempted to drag it down the hill.
B.3.	見有人吃东西就走过去了。	Seeing that there were people eating, he inched his way over.
B.4.	見我吃了点酒就用謊話来吓我。	Seeing that I had had a few drinks, he used lies to scare me.

III. Notes:

A. Form A and Form B do not necessarily mean 'seeing X' but usually mean 'whenever X, Y.'

B.1. Form A is a contracted construction of two VPs, VP^1 is a Verb-Object (noun), and VP^2 is Adverb-Verb, jiu VP. There can never be a pause between the two VPs in Form A.

	VP^1	VP^2	
	jian N	jiu VP	
(1)	見书	就买	Whenever there are books, he will buy them. He buys books indiscriminately.
(2)	見酒	就喝	Whenever there is liquor, he will drink it.
(3)	見草	就拔	Whenever there are weeds, pull them.
(4)	見火药	就收	Whenever they find gunpowder they confiscate it.

The noun in VP^1 must be a simple noun. Although single syllable nouns are most common, multiple syllable nouns may also be used (4).

B.2. Form A can have only one topic in direct construction with VP^1 and VP^2. Therefore, the topic must precede both VP^1 and VP^2 - jian N jiu VP.

(5) 他見人就笑。 He smiles at whomever he sees.

(6) 这个孩子見糖就吃。 This child eats candy whenever and wherever he can find it.

B.3. Form A is derived from the following:

yi meici jian N jiu V 一/每次見 就

Therefore the whole expression is used to comment on the customary or habitual behavior of the topic.

B.4. The verb jian (見) in VP^1 may have the following suffixes indicating that jian is accomplished, rather than indicating that the whole expression happened in the past.

(7)a 他見了人就笑。 Whenever he meets someone he smiles.

(7)b 他見到人就笑。 (same)

(7)c 他見着人就笑。 (same)

Thus, they may occur with adverb *yi* (一) and/or *meici* (每次).

For instance:

(8)a 他一見(了)人就笑。 As soon as he meets someone he smiles.

(8)b 他一見(到)人就笑。 (same)

(8)c 他一見(着)人就笑。 (same)

(8)d 他每次見(了)人就笑。 Everytime he meets someone he smiles.

(8)e 他每次見(到)人就笑。 (same)

C. Compare *yi* X *jiu* Y and *jian* X *jiu* Y.

C.1. In *yi* X *jiu* Y the X is a VP; in *jian* X *jiu* Y the X is a N.

(9) 一看見他就想你。 As soon as I see him, I think of you.

(10) 見(着)他就想你。 Whenever I see him I miss you.

C.2. In *yi* X *jiu* Y, *yi* is an adverb; in *jian* X *jiu* Y, *jian* is a verb. Adverbs can precede any verb including *jian* in *jian* X *jiu* Y. Thus, sentence (12) below may be a part of sentence (11).

(11) 一見他就着急。 As soon as I see him I am worried.

(12) (　)見他就着急。 Whenever I see him I am worried.

C.3. *yi* X *jiu* Y may either have a single topic or two different topics-- 'Topic^1 *yi* X, Topic^2 *jiu* Y.' (Sentences (14) and (15) below). *jian* X *jiu* Y may have only one single topic - 'Topic *jian* X *jiu* Y.'

(13) 他見书就买。 Whenever he sees books, he wants to buy them.

(14) 他一来就高兴。 As soon as he comes here he is happy.

(15) 他一来你就高兴。 As soon as he comes, you are happy.

* 他見书你就买 NA

C.4. Because of the above distinction, yi X jiu Y can accommodate a pause, formally indicated by a comma - yi X, jiu Y, while jian X jiu Y cannot.

D.1. Form B is similar to Form A in that the structure consists of VP^1 and VP^2, where VP^1 is jian X and VP^2 is jiu VP. However, the variables X and Y do not have restrictions as those in Form A.

(16) 見满地零碎的东西就知道出事了。
Seeing the broken things strewn over the ground, she knew that something had happened.

(17) 見有很多零碎东西就觉得奇怪。
He saw a lot of miscellaneous articles and felt surprised.

(18) 見工作已经作完就准备回家了。
In view of the fact that the work was done, he prepared to go home.

(19) 見象片就又想起了很多伤心的事。
Seeing the picture he again remembered the many heartbreaking events.

(20) 見起了火光就带着家人跑了。
Seeing that the fire lit up the sky, she led her family away.

(21) 見作不成就借口先走了。
Seeing that it could not be accomplished, he found an excuse and left.

D.2. Form B may otherwise be expressed by the following: 'zai/dang/dengdao....de shihou' (sentence (22) below).

(22) 在/当/等到工作完了的时候，
就准备回家了。
When the job was completed, he left.

(23) 在/当/等到看見象片的时候，
就伤心的哭了。
When he saw the pictures, he was deeply moved and cried.

D.3. As in the case of zai/dang, when the X in jian X is a VP or a T-C, jian is optional. For instance:

(24)	(见)人笑就笑。	Whenever others smile, he smiles.
(25)	(见)人打架就躲开。	Whenever there is a fight, he tries to get away.
*	(见)人就笑	NA

D.4. As in any compound sentence where the first component presents the condition, cause, etc., and jiu introduces the consequence, results, etc., it is possible to express the degree of 'inevitability' either by changing the adverb jiu to yushi (于是) to indicate an ordinary temporal sequence by changing it to cai (才) to indicate the consequence which takes place only under specific circumstances. For example:

(26)a	他见工作作完于是准备走。	When the work is done, then prepare to leave.
(26)b	他见工作作完马上准备走。	When the work is done, he will immediately leave.
(26)c	他见工作作完才准备走。	He will not prepare to leave until the work is done.

E. In summary, the following are the similarities and dissimilarities between Forms A and B:

a. Form A: yi is optional
   Form B: jian is optional

b. Form A: X is N
   Form B: X may be NP, VP, or T-C construction

c. Form A: There is no pause between jian X and jiu Y.
   Form B: There may be a pause between them, indicated by a comma.

d. Form A: It may be used with adverbs yi (一) or meici (每次)

Form B: It may be used with phrases zai/dang/dengdao....de shihou

e. Form A: There may only be one single topic that must come before jian X jiu Y.

Form B: There may be two topics, either used before jian X or jiu Y.

f. Form A: It must maintain the form jian X jiu Y.

Form B: It may be expressed with adverbs mashang (马上), cai (才), yushi (于是), etc., instead of jiu (就).

Footnote: In idiomatic and formulaic expressions where the VP^2 is a multisyllabic expression or a Verb-Object construction, jiu may be omitted. For instance:

	VP^1	VP^2	
	jian N	(jiu) VP	
(1)	见利	忘义	[Whenever there is profit he forgets righteousness.] He forgets honor at the sight of money.
(2)	见风	转舵	[Wherever the wind blows, direct your rudder accordingly.] Sail with the wind.

23 The Usage of Aux VP^1 jiu VP^1 Aux VP^1 就 VP^1

I. Form:

Aux VP^1 jiu VP^1

II. Examples:

A. 能买房子就买房子。	Buy a house when you can.
B. 不能买房子就不买房子。	Don't buy houses if you can't affort it.
C. 能不买房子就不买。	Don't buy a house if you don't have to.

III. Notes:

A. This is basically a variation of a conditional construction (i.e., condition-consequence). It is derived from yaoshi Aux VP^1 jiu VP^1 (要是 Aux VP^1 就 VP^1) with yaoshi omitted.

B.1. There are two components linked in a condition-consequence relationship. The basic elements are: (1) the Aux VP in Component I, (2) jiu (就) in Component II, and (3) the VP of Aux VP^1 repeated in Component II.

B.2. Negation of this pattern may be accomplished in one of two ways:

a. By negating the Aux VP in Component I and the VP in Component II. The negative marker bu (不) is always used in Component I. However, bu, bie (别), or buyong (不用) may be used in Component II.

(1) 你不想买就不买。	Don't buy it if you don't want to.
(2) 你不想买就别买。	Unless you want to buy it, don't.
(3) 你不想买就不用买。	If you don't want to buy it, there is no need to.

b. By negating only the verb in both components. The only negative marker to be used is bu.

(4) 你想不买就不买。 If you prefer not to buy it, don't buy it.

B.3. The object of both the Aux VP in Component I and the repeated VP in Component II may be explicitly stated.

(5) 你想买房子就买房子。 Buy a house if you want to.

(6) 你不想买房子就不买房子。 Don't buy a house if you don't want to.

(7) 你想不买房子就不买房子。 Don't buy a house if you prefer not to

When the object is not explicitly stated, there must be a prestated object.

(8) 这所房子你想买就买。 [As for this house, if you want to buy it, buy it.] Buy the house if you want to.

B.4. Usually, the use of different Aux Verbs does not significantly change the meaning of the pattern, but when the Aux Verb is de (得), the meaning of the pattern changes in the following way:

(9) 你得作就作。 [If you get a chance to to it, then do it.] Do it when you get a chance.

Example (9) implies that 'you had better do it when you get a chance.' Other Aux Verbs do not have this coercive connotation. For example:

(10) 你应当作就作。 Do it if you should.

(11) 你会作就作。 Do it if you know how.

Furthermore, for de....jiu.... (得 .... 就 ....) there is an alternate semi-literary form, de....qie....(得 .... 且 ....). Thus (9) may be stated as follows:

(12) 你得作且作。

B.5. The semi-literary form de....qie.... has more restrictions in usage, as is the case in many semi-literary forms.

a. For instance, in the colloquial form Aux VP^1 jiu VP^1, the VP may have a verb and object as in (13) below.

(13) 他能教中国史就教中国史。	He may teach Chinese history if he is capable of doing so.
(14) 你得学点能耐学就点吧！	You had better learn some skills when you get the chance to.

However, the semi-literary form de....qie may not have a VO compound or Verb-Object construction.

b. There are vocabulary restrictions as well. Compare the following:

(15) 得饶人的地方就饶人。	Forgive others when you can.
(16) 得饶人处且饶人。	
(17) 得过一天就过一天。	Live one day at a time, or make do with what comes.
(18) 得过且过。	

More literary vocabulary is necessary as is demonstrated by the choice of chu (处) over difang (地方).

c. The more concise expression in (18) is an example of another constraint of a literary usage.

d. The colloquial form may have negated versions (see B.2 above), but the semi-literary form may not.

* 得不玩且不玩。	NA
* 不得过且不过。	NA

B.6. The subjects of Components I and II are always identical and the subject of Component II may be omitted (as 19 below).

(19)a 你会看书你就看书. Read a book when you can.

(19)b 你会看书( )就看书.

B.7. The adverb *jiu* is not optional in the following cases:

a. When the Aux Verb is affirmative, and

b. When the VPs (VP^1 and VP^2) are consistently affirmative or consistently negative (+Aux $\underline{\pm}$ VP^1 *jiu* $\underline{\pm}$ VP^2).

(20)a 你能唱就唱. Sing if you can.

(20)b* 你能唱( )唱. NA

(21)a 你能不唱就不唱. Don't sing if you can get out of singing.

(21)b* 你能不唱( )不唱. NA

The adverb *jiu* is optional in either of the following cases:

a. When the Aux VP^1 and VP^2 are consistently negated: (+Aux VP^1 *jiu* + VP^2)

b. When the whole structure is duplicated and contrasted affirmatively and negatively:

(+ Aux VP^1 *jiu* + VP^2), (- Aux VP^1 *jiu* - VP^2).

(22)a 你不能唱就不唱. Don't sing if you cannot sing.

(22)b 你不能唱( )不唱. "

(23)a 你能唱就唱，不能唱就不唱. Sing if you can, don't if you cannot.

(23)b 你能唱( )唱，不能唱( )不唱.

(24)a 你应当买就买，不应当买就不买. Buy it if you should, don't buy it if you should not.

(24)b 你应当买(   )买，不应当买(   )不买。

Thus, jiu is optional when both components are negated, as illustrated in B.1.a. and if the whole structure is duplicated and contrasted, as in the illustrations (23] and (24) above.

24 The Usage of QW Phrase^1 jiu QW Phrase^2 QW Phrase^1 就 QW Phrase^2

I. Form:

QW Phrase^1 jiu QW Phrase^2

II. Examples:

A. 你喜欢谁你就请谁。 Invite whomever you like.

B. 你要什么我就买什么。 I will buy whatever you want.

C. 谁想来谁就来。 Whoever wants to come will come.

D. 他什么好看就买什么。 He buys whatever is pretty.

III. Notes:

A. This is a combination of the following two patterns with slight modification:

(a) non-interrogative usages of QW

(1) 谁都想来。 Every one wants to come.

(2) 他不买什么。 He does not by anything special

(b) conditional usage

(3) (东西)要是便宜就好卖。 It will be easy to sell if it is inexpensive.

(4) (东西)要是便宜就给你买。 I will buy it for you if it is cheap.

Therefore the basic meaning of the QW Phrase^1 jiu QW Phrase^2 is:

VP^2 whatever/whichever/wherever/whomever VP^1

B.1. There are two basic components in this structure:

COMPONENT I		COMPONENT II	
Topic^1	Comment^1	Topic^2	Comment^2
NP^1	VP^1	NP^2	jiu VP^2

Component I is the condition and Component II is the consequence. They are linked by (1) the usage of adverb jiu (就) in the second component, indicating the causal relationship between them and (2) the repeated usage of a QW in its non-interrogative function in both components.

B.2. The construction types of the two components may or may not be identical. For instance:

	COMPONENT I	COMPONENT II:	Construction types and meanings
(5)	什么有用	什么就贵	Topic Description + Topic Description Whatever is useful is expensive.
(6)	什么有用	他就要什么	Topic Description + Topic Function He wants (accepts) whatever is useful.
(7)	你需要什么	你就买什么	Topic Function + Topic Function You buy whatever you need.
(8)	谁想买	谁就买	Topic Function + Topic Function Whoever wants to buy it, may buy it.
(9)	哪个是你的	你就拿哪个	Topic Identification + Topic Function Take whichever is yours
(10)	字典在哪	书就在哪	Topic Location + Topic Location The place where the dictionary is is where the book is.

B.3. The QWs in Components I and II must be identical, though their functions may differ.

	COMPONENT I	COMPONENT II	QW Functions
(5)	什么有用	什么就贵	Subject + Subject
(6)	什么有用	他就要什么	Subject + Object

B.4. The conditional relationship may be expressed with structural signals such as yaoshi....jiu.... (要是 .... 就 ....), ruguo....jiu.... (如果 .... 就 ....), zhiyao....jiu....(只要 .... 就 ....), etc. Since the signal is optional, one may omit it.

(11)a 要是你不念书你就不能毕业。 If you don't study you can't graduate.

(11)b (　　)你不念书你就不能毕业。

(11)c (　　)你不念书(　　)不能毕业。

In the case of (11)c, the conditional relationship between these two components is expressed only by the sequential arrangement of the two components.

(12)a 谁要是有钱谁就买。 Whoever has money may buy this painting.

(12)b 谁(　　)有钱谁(　　)买。

(12)c 谁有钱谁买。

B.5. When the QWs used in this structure are objects of verbs in the components, the subjects of verb phrases in both components may differ. For example:

(13) 你想请谁我就给谁写信。 I will extend an invitation to whomever you want to invite.

B.6. When the subjects of both components are identical and are not QWs, the second subject is often omitted. For instance:

(7) 你需要什么你就买什么。

(7)a 你需要什么(　　)就买什么。

When the second subject is omitted, there are the following rules concerning the adverb *jiu*:

a. If the VP in Component I is an Aux VP (i.e., Auxiliary V - V - O) the adverb *jiu* is optional.

(14) 你要到哪去就到哪去。 Go wherever you want.

(14)a 你要到哪去(　　)到哪去。

(15) 你爱怎么用你就怎么用。 Use it whichever way (however) you like to.

(15)a 你爱怎么用(　　)怎么用。

b. If the VP in Component I is a simple Verb-Object and it is repeated in Component II (i.e., Verb^1-QW^1, *jiu* Verb^1-QW^1), the adverb *jiu* is not optional.

(16)a 你说什么你就说什么。 Say whatever you like.

* 你说什么(　　)说什么 NA

c. If the VP in Component I is a simple Verb-Object and is different with the VP in Component II (i.e., V^1-QW^1, *jiu* V^2-QW^1), adverb *jiu* is optional.

(17) 你想什么(你就)有什么。 You will have whatever you desire.

(18) 他说什么(就)是什么。 Whatever he says goes.

C. Compare (a) QW Phrase jiu QW Phrase and (b) Aux VP jiu VP.

C.1. Both are variant forms of conditional constructions such as yaoshi.... jiu...., and both therefore consist of two components: Component I presenting the condition and Component II presenting the consequence.

C.2. In addition to jiu as a structural feature, both have certain repeated elements. In (a) the repeated element is the QW. In (b) the repeated element is the VP.

C.3. When both (a) and (b) share similar features in their respective Component I (i.e., Aux VP), the adverb jiu is optional in (a) but not in (b).

C.4. The particular optional feature of jiu in (a) demonstrates that the repeated QW in both components is an important structural signal for the condition-consequence relationship of the components.

In contrast, jiu as an obligatory feature of (b) indicates that the repeated VP is of no significance to the structural linkage of the components.

25 The Usage of VP^1 jiu VP^1 de shi X   VP 就 VP^1 的 是 X .

I. Forms:

A. V^1 jiu V deshi NP/VP/S

B. SV^1 jiu SV deshi NP/VP/S

II. Examples:

A.1.	怕就怕的是你。	[The one which is being feared is none other than you.] You are the one I fear.
A.2.	苦就苦的是不识字。	[That which is suffered is being illiterate.] Being illiterate is precisely the reason for suffering.
A.3.	疼就疼的是他孝顺。	[That which is treasured and loved is his being filial.] His being filial is the reason why he is loved.
A.4.	恨就恨的是他不争气。	[That which is greatly regretted is his lack of ambition.] What is regrettable is his lack of ambition.
A.5,	讨厌就讨厌的是他碎嘴子。	[That which is objectionable is his being a chatterbox.] His being a chatterbox is the reason why he is objectionable.
B.1.	好就好的是他有钱。	[That which is fortunate is his being rich.] His being rich is precisely what is fortunate.
B.2.	坏就坏的是他太老。	[That which is bad is being old.] Its toughness is precisely why it is bad.
B.3.	贵就贵的是他的签名。	[That which is expensive is his signature.] His signature is precisely what makes it expensive.

III. Notes

A. This structure is used to indicate emphatically the object or the purpose of an action or a comment/description.

B.1. The two variables 'X' in this structure must be identical.

$\overset{X}{\ldots\ldots}$ 就 $\overset{X}{\ldots\ldots}$ 的是 .....

怕就怕的是 ..... (correct)

恨就恨的是 ..... (correct)

* 怕就恨的是 ..... NA

* 恨就怕的是 ..... NA

They may, however, be either verbs or SVs.

(1)	卖就卖的是他的名。	What sells it is his name.
(2)	否认就否认的是这一点。	What is denied is precisely this point.
(3)	爱就爱的是这块玉。	What is treasured is this piece of jade.
(4)	好就好的是没人知道。	What is fortunate is that no one else knows it.
(5)	糊涂就糊涂的是这儿。	What he is confused about is this point.

They may be single syllable words such as those in sentences II.A.1, 2, 3, and 4; II.B.1., 2, and 2; and (1), (3), and (4), or they may be multi-syllabic as in II.A.5, (2), and (5). Single syllable words are most frequently used in this structure, and VO compounds are never used here.

* 做饭就做饭的是给他吃 NA

* 说明白就说明白的是这一点 NA

Expressions consisting of VO compounds may be stated in the following manner: V^1 就 V^1 的是 NP:

(6)	做就做的是给他吃的饭。	What is prepared is his food. When I cook, I only cook for him.

(7)	说就说的是这一点。	What is being discussed is this very point.
(8)	明白就明白的是这一点。	What is understood is this very point.

Whether the variable X in this structure is a verb or a SV, it is never negative. Negative qualities, intentions, etc. must be expressed in positive terms. Thus:

*	不喜欢就不喜欢的是你	NA
(9)	讨厌就讨厌的是你。	(correct) You are the person I despise.
*	不好就不好的是太老	NA
(10)	坏就坏的是太老。	(correct) Same as II.B.2.

B.2. The variable Y in this structure can be one of the following:

NP:

(11)	得罪就得罪的是他。	He is the one who is offended.
(12)	要就要的是珠宝玉器。	Precious collections are what are desired.
(13)	好就好的是这点聪明。	This bit of cleverness is just why he is valued.

VP:

(14)	怕就怕的是不吃东西。	What is feared is the inability to eat.
(15)	盼就盼的是重归故里。	What is greatly hoped for is to return to one's own home town.
(16)	可怜就可怜的是无依无靠。	Being destitute is what is pitiful.

TC:

(17) 怜惜就怜惜的是怀才不遇。
His not being discovered is just what is regrettable.

(18) 求就求的是家宅安宁。
What is greatly sought after is the peace and security of one's family.

(19) 可恶就可恶的是他不肯上进。
His refusal to work hard is just what makes him hateful.

When Y is a VP or a T-C, it can be either affirmative (such as (15) and (18)), or negative (such as (4), (6), (7), and (19)).

B.3. The whole structure can be used in a larger structure as a comment in a Topic-Comment construction.

Form A:

X 就 X 的是 Y → Topic X 就 X 的是 Y

(II.A.1) 怕就怕的是你 → 他怕就怕的是你

(II.A.5) 讨厌就讨厌的是他碎嘴子 → 我讨厌就讨厌的是他碎嘴子

Form B - When Y is not a T-C construction:

X 就 X 的是 Y → Topic X 就 X 的是 Y

(15) 盼就盼的是重归故里 → 他盼就盼的是重归故里

(16) 可怜就可怜的是无依无靠 → 他可怜就可怜的是无依无靠

(5) 糊涂就糊涂的是这儿 → 他糊涂就糊涂的是这儿

(II.B.2) 坏就坏的是太老 → 这个坏就坏的是太老

(II.B.3) 貴就貴的是他的签名 → 这张画貴就貴的是他的签名

Form B - When Y is a T-C construction:

a. X 就 Y 的是 (T-C) → T X 就 X 的是 C

(II.B.1) 好就好的是他有钱 → 他好就好的是他有钱

(19) 可恶就可恶的是他不肯用功 → 他可恶就可恶的是不肯用功

b. X 就 X 的是 (T^1-C^1) → T^2 X 就 X 的是 (T^1-C^1)

(4) 好就好的是没人知道 → 这件事好就好的是没人知道

B.4. From the following illustrations of the transformation process, the characteristics of this structure are revealed.

Form A has been transformed from a basic structure of a verb and its object (X=Verb, Y=Object). In the first step of the transformation, the V-O structure is changed into a Topic-Identification construction. X Y X 的是 Y. From X 的是 Y, a second step transformation for the sake of emphasis and of exclusiveness involves repeating the verb and employing the adverb before X 的是 Y. The complete process is shown below:

Basic: X Y (X is the Functive Verb and Y the Object)

Step 1: X 的是 Y

Step 2: X 就 X 的是 Y.

(5) a 怕你

(5) b 怕的是你

(5) c 怕就怕的是你

When the similar transtormation process is applied to a different basic structure the result is Form B. For Form B the basic structure is X 是因为 Y. The entire transformation process is shown below:

Basic: X 是因为 Y

Step 1: X 的是 Y

Step 2: X 就 X 的是 Y

(6)a 好是因为他有钱

(6)b 好的是他有钱

(6)c 好就好的是他有钱

26 The Usage of X jiushi Y X 就是 Y

I. **Form:**

X jiushi Y

II. **Examples:**

A. 他就是要赌个输赢。

He just wants to gamble.
He insists on gambling.
He is the one who wants to gamble.

B. 他就是不谈政治。

He insists on not talking about politics.
He just won't talk about politics.
He is the one who will not talk about politics.

C. 他就是胡来。

He persistently acts irresponsibly.
He is the one who acts irresponsibly.
He just acts irresponsibly.

III. Notes:

A. Briefly, in addition to the well-recognized usages of jiushi (就是), meaning 'none other than' and 'just, only,' there are other varied semantic functions which are determined by structures, construction types, and other linguistic environments. Two of them will be examined here, namely, the emphasis of the topic ('he is the one') and the obstinacy or perversity of the topic.

A.2. In the structure X jiushi Y, variable X is the topic, variable Y is the VP, and jiushi is the adverb that precedes the VP. jiushi together with the VP constitute the comment. In other words, this structure is a Topic-Comment construction: NP jiushi VP.

A.3. There are four different semantic functions of *jiushi*. The word *jiushi* may occur in all T-C construction types, each of which has a different connotation from the other. For instance:

a. Topic-Identification: NP^1 *jiushi* NP^2

(1) 他就是我朋友。

He is none other than my friend.[He is the one who is my friend.]
He is just my friend.
[Nothing more than that]

b. Topic-Description: NP^1 *jiushi* SVP

(2) 他就是懒。

He is only lazy.
He is the one who is lazy.

c. Topic-Location: NP^1 *jiushi* *zai* PW

(3) 他就是在家。

He is the one who is at home.

d. Topic-Existence: PW *jiushi* *you* NP

(4) 这儿就是有中国书。

There are only Chinese books here.
This place is where Chinese books are available.

e. Topic-Function: NP^1 *jiushi* FVP

(5) 他就是做中国饭。

He is the one who cooks Chinese food.
He cooks Chinese food only.
He insists on cooking Chinese food.

There are four different semantic functions of *jiushi*:

i. 'none other than'

(6) “记得我跟你说的那本书吗？”
“记得。”
“就是这本。”

"Remember the book I told you about? "
"Yes, I remember."
"This is it."

ii. 'only, nothing else'

(7) 他什么都好就是懒。

He has many good qualities, the only problem is that he is lazy.
[He is O.K. except for being a bit lazy.]

iii. 'to be the one'

(8) “你们谁也不知道这个是什么？”
“他就是知道。”

None of you knows what that is? [He is one who knows.]
He does.

(9) “你们没人会说中国话！”
“谁说的？我就是会！”

Not even one of you can speak Chinese? Who says so?
[I am one who can speak Chinese.]
I can!

iv. 'to be insistent'

(10) 我们都劝他不要去，他就是不听。

We have all tried to tell him not to go. He just won't listen.

Among the various construction types, the four semantic functions are distributed in the following ways:

Topic-Identification	i iii
Topic-Description	ii iii
Topic-Location	iii
Topic-Existence	ii iii
Topic-Function	ii iii iv

From the illustrations given in the preceding section, it is clear that not all of the functions of jiushi are commonly shared by all construction types.

Function i is exclusively used in Topic-Identification.

Function ii is used in Topic-Description, Topic-Existence, and Topic-Function.

Function iii is used in all five types.

Function iv is used only in Topic-Function construction.

In short, aside from the well-known function of 'none other than,' and 'only,' the most frequent semantic function is (iii) and the most unique, though not necessarily less frequent, is (iv). Here we will examine these semantic functions, (iii) and (iv).

B.1. The word jiushi in semantic function (iii) indicates an exception to the remark which has just been made.

(11) 甲对乙：“我敢说你一个朋友也没有。”
丙对乙：“不用听他的，
我就是你朋友。”

A to B: "You don't even have a single friend, I bet!"
C to B: "Don't listen to him. I am your friend."

(12) 甲：“我敢说我们这儿没有人懒。”
乙：“谁说的？他呢？他不就是懒吗？”

A: "I can declare that none of us is lazy."
B: "Oh yeah? How about him? He is lazy."

(13) 甲：“我们都得出去工作，没有例外。”
乙：“那么她呢？
为什么她就是躲在家里？”

A: "We all have to go out to work. No one can be exempted from it."
B: "Well then, how about her? Why does she just stay home?

(14) 甲：“这个地方真糟，
连一张本地的地图都买不到。”
乙：“真的吗？老王店里就是有地图。”

A: "This place is terrible. I cannot even find a place which sells local maps."
B: "Really? Lao Wang's store has them."

(15) 甲：“没人喜欢中国饭，
我不做中国饭了。”
乙：“怎么呢？我就是喜欢中国饭。”

A: "Nobody likes Chinese food. I am not going to make Chinese dishes any more."
B: "Why do you say no one likes it? I do."

In most of these illustrations, the word jiushi may be shortened to jiu （就） except in Topic-Identification constructions.

B.2. Generally, in spoken language, this usage of jiushi may be readily distinguished from others by intonation, with primary stress on the topic. For instance:

(11) 我就是你朋友。

(12) 他就是懒。

(13) 她就是老在家。

(14) 老王店里就是有地图。

(15) 我就是喜欢中国饭。

But, in the written language, where intonation markers are missing, this usage may only be distinguished from the others by context. For instance:

(16) 甲：“谁都很勤快，没人象你这么懒！”	A: "Everyone else is diligent, no one is as lazy as you are!"
乙：“老王就是懒。”	B: "Lao Wang is lazy."
(17) 甲：“老王有很多特长技能。”	A: "Lao Wang is good at many things."
乙：”老王就是懒。”	B: "He is just lazy."

B.3. The usage of jiushi in its semantic function (iii) may occur with either an affirmative VP or a negative VP. It may include a statement of past, present, or future events or habitual happenings. For instance:

(18) 他就是不听话。	He is the one who does not listen to others (habitual)
(19) 他就是不想去。	He is the one who will not/ does not want to go (present or future)

(20) 他就是没听话。 He is the one who did not listen to others (past).

B.4. In this usage, the structure X *jiushi* Y may be expanded to be X *jiushi* Y *de* N. For instance, (12) is expanded to be (21):

(12) 他就是懒。

(21) 他就是懒的人。(他就是懒的一个)

The transformation process of (21) to (12) is as follows:

(21) 他就是懒的人。

→他就是懒的。

(12) → 他就是懒。

And (12) may be further contracted to (22)

(12) 他就是懒。

(22) 他就(是)懒。

B.5. The VP with which *jiushi* is used in semantic function (iii) may have the following aspect markers:

(5)a 他就是做中国饭。 He is one who makes Chinese food.

(5)b 他就是做过中国饭。 He is one who has experienced making Chinese food.

(5)c 他就是做了中国饭。 He is one who made Chinese food.

(5)d 他就是等着你呢。 He is one who is waiting for you.

C.1. When jiushi indicates the speaker/topic's perversity in committing certain acts, (iv), the structure X jiushi Y is a Topic-Function construction. (See III.A.3.)

C.2. The word jiushi in its semantic function (iv) is distinguished from other usages by intonation in spoken language. For instance:

(23)a 他̣就是要看书。	(iii) (Who says that there is nobody who wants to read?)
(23)b 他就是要̣看̣书̣。	(ii) (He does not want to do other things)
(23)c 他就是要看书。	(iv) (He is very insistent in wanting to read)

But, in the written language, where intonation markers are absent, usages (iv) and (iii) have to be distinguished by the context. For instance:

(24) 甲：“太不好意思了！你们没人要看书！”
乙：“他就是要看书。”

A: "How come no one wants to read? Shame on you!"
B: "He wants to read."

(25) 甲：“大夫叫他休息不要看书，”
乙：“他就是要看书，我怎么办？”

A: "The doctor asked him to rest and not to use his eyesight in reading."
B: "What can I do? He insists on reading."

C.3. This usage may occur with affirmative VP or negative VP.

(25) 他就是要看书。 (affirmative)

(26) 他就是不听话。 (negative)

C.4. The time element may not be expressed within the structure X jiushi Y, but occurs either before or after it and the aspect marker le (了) cannot be used.

(25) 他就是要看书。 (correct)

(26) 他就是喜欢吃中国菜。 [correct]

o 他就是要看书了。 NA [?He now changed his interest to want to read nothing else)

(27) 昨天开会我们都劝他去他就是不去。 We all tried to encourage him to go to the meeting held yesterday, but he persisted in refusing.

(28) 去年，虽然是大年初一，大家都参加一手他就是不肯赌。 Last year, he just would not consent to gamble, even though it was at the New Year's Eve celebration and everyone was invited to gamble.

C.5. There are certain phrases with which the semantic function (iv) of jiushi often occurs. These are buguan (不管), renping (任凭), suibien (随便), etc.

(29) 管他多贵，他就是要买。 In spite of the fact that this is too expensive, he insists on buying it.

(30) 任凭他出多少，我就是不卖。 Who cares how much he will pay for it? I'm not selling.

(31) 随便你说什么，我就是不吃。 Whatever you say, I just will not eat.

D. Comparison of (iii) and (iv) and others:

D.1. In addition to their differences in intonation patterns and construction types, they are different also in the fact that (iii) may have a VP with guo (过), le (了), or zhe....ne (着 .... 呢) markers, but (iv) may not.

D.2. Semantic function (iv) compared to adverb fei (非) or si (死).

D.2.a. feiyao (非要), siye (死也),and jiushi may all occur in Topic-Function construction to mean insistence, persistence, and determinati against all odds, to do something. However, adverb si (死) or siye

(死也) may be used with a negative verb phrase only.

(32) 他就是要看。 He insists on seeing it.

(33) 他非要看。 (same as above)

* 他死(也)要看。 NA

(34) 他就是不看。 He persistently refuses to see it.

(35) 他非不看。 (same as above)

(36) 他死也不看。 (same as above)

D.2.b. Each of the adverbs may have an abbreviated form. *jiu* or *jiushi* may both occur before either an affirmative VP or a negative VP. *si* or *siye* may both occur only before a negative VP. However, the difference between *fei* and *feiyao* is that the former may occur with either affirmative or negative VPs, but the latter may occur with only affirmative VPs. In short, they are used as follows:

Affirmative VP:

$$\text{他}\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{就是}\\ \text{就}\\ \text{非要}\\ \text{非}\end{array}\right\}\text{看书（……）。}$$

Negative VP:

$$\text{他}\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{就是}\\ \text{就}\\ \text{非}\\ \text{死也}\\ \text{死}\end{array}\right\}\text{不看书（……）。}$$

D.2.c. The adverb *fei(yao)* reflects only the intentional commitment of the subject to do the action, *jiushi* in addition reflects the circumstantial pressure for such a commitment, while *siye* represents the most determined attitude, or inherent ability or inability.

(37)a 他死也不去。
(37)b 他就是不去。 intention alone
(37)c 他非不去。

(38)a 他死也学不会。
(38)b 他就是学不会。 innate ability
*(38)c 他非学不会 (NA)

27 The Usage of lai 来

I. Form:

X lai (Nu M N)

II. Examples:

A.	我们要打球你来不来？	We want to play ball. Would you like to join us?
B.	这件事我办不了你来吧？	I cannot handle this matter. You had better do it.
C.	他不会做饭下厨房乱来一气。	He does not know how to cook; he is in the kitchen just fooling around.
D.	这个钉子没钉进去，你得再来一下！	This nail is not securely hammered in. You have to hammer once more.
E.	好酒！再来一杯！	Excellent wine! Have another!
F.	咱们来两盘围棋呀！	How about having a couple of rounds of go?
G.	真想来八圈麻将。	I really would like to play eight rounds of Mah-Jongg.
H.	这次不作计较，下次再来这一套 我就不客气了。	I will not say anything this time. If he does it again, I will not be this tolerant.
I.	昨天的迎新晚会节目新颖不落俗套， 时间的控制也很适宜很受欢迎。明年 的迎新会，可以照样来一回。	The welcome party for the newcomers last night was a success: the program was filled with entertaining numbers, the length of each number was perfectly controlled...in short, it was very well received. Next year, we should do the same as we did last night.
J.	伙计："张先生您来了！今天来点什么？" 张："今天就我一个人随便小吃，你给我 配几样吧！"	Waiter: "How are you Mr. Zhang? What is your pleasure today?" Zhang: I am by myself, and just want to have a bit.

	Whatever you recommend."
伙计：“那么先给您来壶酒，来点酒菜儿。喝完了酒再给您来一个汤，一个下饭的菜，您看如何？	Waiter: "Well, then, I will serve you a drink with appetizer. After your drink, I will serve you a soup, and a dish that will whet your appetite. Will that be all right?"
张：“好！”	Zhang: "Fine."
K. 伙计：“您今天买点什么？”	Attendant: "What would you like to have today?"
主顾：“你给我来四斤黄酱，三斤上等香油。”	Customer: "Get me four pounds of soybean paste, and three pounds of your best sesame oil.

III. Notes:

A. Briefly, the word lai (来), besides having a usage as a motion verb or a directional verb ending, has a special pro-verbal usage which will be examined here.

B.1. This special usage of lai may be further divided into the following subgroups:

a. lai may replace a particular verb or verb phrase already mentioned in the context. It is used as an intransitive verb.

(1) 我们要打纸牌，你来吗？	We are going to play cards. Will you play with us?
(2) 这个书钉，没钉住，再来一下。	This staple is not properly stapled. Do it once more.

b. lai may replace a particular verb or verb phrase that is in the context implicitly or explicitly and it is followed by a noun or a quantified noun. The verb or verb phrase which lai replaces may be deduced from the characteristics of the noun or noun phrase. It is used as a transitive verb.

(3)	昨天我们来了几盘棋。	Yesterday we played a few rounds of go.
(4)	这瓶是直接从家乡运来的，来一点。	This bottle is straight from our hometown. Have a little.

c. lai may represent a concept expressed in forms beyond the limit of a verb or verb phrase structure. (See B-3-h below)

(5)	他说谎了这次没罚他，他下次再这么来，就不宽容了。	He lied. But he got away this time. If he does it again, he won't be so lucky.
(6)	“别宣布你的来源。” “为什么？” “那样一来，没人肯供给你消息了。”	"Don't disclose your sources." "Why?" "If you do, no one will offer you any information."

d. lai may represent a composite verbal concept.

(7)	“今天吃点什么？” “给我来点好茶，来点水饺。”	"What would you have today?" "Get me some of your best tea and home-made dumplings."

B.2. This usage of lai may occur in the following constructions: In an affirmative or negative construction, as in sentences (8) through (14), in a question construction, as in sentences (11) through (13), in the completion aspect as in sentence (14), in the resultative form, as in sentences (8), (17), and in modified form with adverbs, as in sentences (15) and (16)

(8)	这种工作我来不了，您另请高明吧！	I can't handle this type of job. Please find someone else to do it.

(9)	我已经打了两场了，不来了，你来吧！	I have played two games, and I am going to stop now. You had better take over.
(10)	你不来啦？我来！	Are you sure you do not want to do it anymore? Then I will do it.
(11)	我建议玩兰球. 谁来？	I suggest we play basketball. Who wants to play?
(12)	我不来了，你来吗？	I am going to stop now. Would you like to do it?
(13)	他不来，你来不来？	He is not going to do it. Would you do it then?
(14)	“昨天他们打球，你来了吗？” “没来。”	Yesterday they played ball. Did you play? No.
(15)	冰淇淋作好了，谁来？天热一会儿就化，快来，快来！	The ice cream is ready. Who wants it? You must hurry. The weather is too hot. It will melt in no time.
(16)	“饺子煮好了不能一块吃，您先来。” “一块来，足够。”	The dumplings are done. We cannot all eat together. You eat first. There is enough for all of us. Let's eat together
(17)	“咱们来盘围棋呀？” “不行不行象棋还可以，围棋来不了”	How about playing a game of go? No. I cannot. If it is chess I can do it, but not if it is go.

B.3. Based on the above description, the behavior of lai is similar to other functive verbs. The differences are:

a. Functive verbs in Chinese clearly prescribe certain types of actions. In contrast, lai does not prescribe any kinds of activities in this special usage.

b. Functive verbs may not replace other functive verbs, while lai may take the place of verbs of action or activity. For example.

where lai represents actions mentioned in the context, lai represents da qiu (打球) in (II-A), banshi (办事) in (II-B), zuofan (做饭) in (II-C), and ding (钉) in (II-D).

Where lai represents actions deduced from the noun or number-measure, lai represents he (喝) from yi bei (一杯) in (II-E), xia (下) from weichi (围棋) in (II-F), and da (打) from majiang(麻将) in (II-G.)

Where lai represents a concept which is expressed in a structure longer than a verb, verb phrase, or Topic-Comment construction:

In (II-H) lai represents a particular type of behavior. One may deduce that what it represents is something unreasonable, unwelcome, or unacceptable from the context.

In (II-I) lai represents a particular way in which the evening program is planned, coordinated, and presented, the description beginning at jiemu (节目) to hen shiyi (很适宜).

where lai represents more complicated verbal concepts, such as two combined different verbal concepts:

In (II-J) lai combines the waiter's na (拿) or duan (端) and the customer's jiao (叫), dian (点), or chi (吃).

In (II-K) lai combines the store attendant's cheng (盛), zhuang (装), or na (拿) and the customer's yao (要), or mai (买).

Here there is an additional complexity involved in the use of the pro-verb lai. In the structure of X gei Y lai Nu M N, lai maintains an actor-action relationship with both X and Y. This complicated relationship will be discussed in Section C-3 below.

C. Compare the pro-verb *lai* with other pro-verbs:

C.1. In a quantified action structure - Verb Nu M, such as *kan yi ci* (看一次) or duration of action structure - Verb Nu M, such as *kan yi tian* (看一天), *lai* (来) is used in the same manner as the other so-called pro-verbs.

Pro-verbs -Nu M	*lai* 来	*nong* 弄	*zuo* 做	*gao* 搞	*gan* 干
-*yi ci*	V	V	V	V	V
-*yi tian*	V	V	V	V	V

C.2. In the structure X *gei* Y verb, such as *ta gei ni mai* (他给你买) when the verb is *lai* the structure can only mean 'X is doing something on behalf of Y.' However, when the verb is any of the others, the structure can mean either 'X is doing something on behalf of Y,' or 'X is doing something and will transfer the ownership of the result to Y.'

		X on behalf of Y	X to Y
(18)a	他给你来	yes	no
(18)b	他给你弄	"	yes
(18)c	他给你做	"	"
(18)d	他给你搞	"	"
(18)e	他给你干	"	"

C.3. In the structure of X *gei* Y Verb Nu M, there is a clear distinction between *lai* and the other pro-verbs, in that the others have applications in common with other functive verbs, while *lai* does not.

(19)a	他给你来一碗汤。	He will get a bowl of soup for you.

(19)b 他给你弄一碗汤。 He will fix a bowl of soup for you.

(19)c 他给你做一碗汤。 He will cook a bowl of soup for you.

(19)d 他给你找一个事。 He will acquire a job for you.

(19)e 他给你干一件事。 He will do a job for you.

All sentences, except (19a), share the following features:

a. Actor: ta (他)

Action: main verb governed by the actor (ta)

Object: Nu M N

Recipient of the Object: ni (你)

b. Of all the elements, gei ni (给你) may be omitted with no change in the structure or the meaning.

c. If the elements ta (他) and gei (给) are omitted, the syntactical relationship between the sentence elements becomes:

Actor: ni (你)

Action: main verb governed by the actor ni

Object: Nu M N

Recipient: unknown

For instance:

(19)b 他给你弄一碗汤。 You fix a bowl of soup.

( )你弄一碗汤。

(19)c 他给你做一碗汤。 You cook a bowl of soup.

( )你做一碗汤。

However, in the sentence with lai as the main verb, the syntactical relationship between sentence elements is different:

a. Actor: ta and ni

Action: main verb (here lai) governed by ta and ni

Object: Nu M N (一碗汤)

Recipient of the object: ni

b. If the element gei ni (给你) is mitted, the syntactical relationship between sentence elements becomes:

Actor: ta

Action: main verb governed by the actor ta

Object: Nu M N (一碗汤)

Recipeint of the Object: ta

For instance:

(19)a	他给你来一碗汤。	He will get a bowl of soup for you.
(20)	他（ ）来一碗汤。	He will have a bowl of soup.

c. If the elements ta (他) and gei (给) are omitted, the syntactical relationship changes and the meaning of pro-verb lai becomes clearly defined.

(19)a	他给你来一碗汤。	lai = duanlai - bring here he - to have/to drink
	（ ）你来一碗汤。	lai = he - to have/to drink

C. 4. Furthermore, as a pro-verb, each of the four nong, zuo, gao, and gan represents a different set of actions, such as:

nong	may mean	磕，抠，捏，收拾，整理，
gao	may mean	干，办，承当，
gsn	may mean	做，办，承当，

zuo may mean 当，任，承应，烹调，写作

but only lai can represent nong, gao, gan, and zuo in addition to others explained in the previous sections. For example:

(21) 甲：“这个表不走了。”	A: "This watch is not running."
乙：“我给弄弄看…不行还是不走。”	B: "Let me fix it for you... no good, it is still not working."
丙：“我来！”	C: "Let me do it."

lai stands for nong

(22) 甲：“作这种事你得先搞一个计划。”	A: "To do this work, you must first have a plan."
乙：“你替我草拟一个。”	B: "Would you draft a plan for me?"
甲：“我不行，你得找老王。”	A: "I can't do it. You have to ask Lao Wang."
乙：“老王，帮我搞一个工作计划行吗？”	B: "Lao Wang, would it be all right to ask you to draft a plan for me?"
老王：“不行，不行，我一个人担不了这么大的责任，咱们三个人商量看来怎么样？”	Lao Wang: " I cannot take on such a heavy assignment. If the three of us work together what would you think of that?"

lai stands for gao

(23) 甲：“这件工作谁愿干？”	A: "Would anyone like to sign up for this job?"
乙：“我干，告诉我什么时候交差？”	B: "I will do it. Please tell me what the deadline is for it."
丙：“我也可以干。”	C: "I can do it also."
乙：“这样好了，叫我先试试，干不了你来。”	B: "How about this : Let me try it first, if I can't manage it, you can take over."

lai stands for gan

(24) 甲：“做五十个人的饭，我一个人不能胜任！”	A: "I can't possibly cook for 50!"
乙：“我跟你分工，你做烧炒，我做点心。”	B: "I will share the job with you. You will be in charge of the main dishes, I'll take care of the dessert."

甲：“谁做小菜呢？”	A: "Who is going to prepare appetizers?"
丙：“我来，我做小菜。”	C: "I will do it. I'll be in charge of appetizers."

lai stands for zuo

C.5. In conclusion, compared to the other four, lai is a pro-verb in the sense that it may be used as a substitution for all actions.

28 The Usage of Lai , S 来，S

I. Form

lai, S

II. Examples:

A. 你们都看不懂吧！来，我给你们看看。	I guess none of you can read it. Let me take a look at it.
B. 这儿一共是三百，来，你一半我一半。	Altogether there are 300. Half for you and half for me.
C. 这片地种菜不成来，咱们改种常青树苗。	This lot is no good for growing vegetables. Let's plant evergreen seedlings.
D. 咱们都算不出来，来，找他帮忙。	We cannot figure it out. Let's ask him for help.

III. Notes:

A. In this particular usage, lai functions as a 独词句 (Single word sentence) By definition, it is a word used all by itself to form a complete and independent sentence.

lai as a word which forms a single word sentence may be rendered as "Come!" or "Come on!" or may be omitted in translation.

B.1. lai as a single word sentence may be used to respond to a preceding sentence as in the following:

(1) 老王：“文斌，帮我把这个算出来”。	Lao Wang: "Wen-bin, help me to figure this out."
文斌“来”。	Wen-bin: "O.K." [Come, let me figure it out for you.]

B.2. lai, the single word sentence, may also be followed by another sentence:

(2) 老王“文斌，帮我把这个算出来。” — Lao Wang: "Wen-bin, help me figure this out."

文斌“来，我给你算。” — Wen-bin: "Come, let me figure it out for you."

Thus the structure lai, S consists of an explicit positive response:-lai, and an explicit response:-S.

B.3. The sentence that lai precedes most frequently begins with the first person or second person pronoun.

(3) 他不能跟你比，来，我们比一比。 — He is no match for you. Let's race.

(4)“所有的资料都全了。”“来，我们可以开始作了。” — "All materials are here!" "Come, let's all start working."

(5) 来，老太太！叫他们伺候您。 — Madam, let them serve you.

(6) 来，替我拣一两件。 — Come on, select one or two good articles for me.

(7) 来，你们先走。 — Come on, you (pl.) go ahead.

B.4. Compare sentences with lai and those without lai.

B.4.a. The expression wo kai che song ta qu (我开车送他去) occurs in each of the following illustrations (10-13). The difference is that the expressions without lai are descriptive statements while those with lai are conversational responses to a suggestion.

(8)你不能开车送他去，我开车送他去。	If you cannot take him there by car, I will do it.
(9)自从我们搬到城外，他上学天天我开车送他去。	Since we moved to the suburbs, I have been driving him to school every day.
(10)你不能开车送他去吗？来，我开车送他去。	You can't take him there by car? Let me do it.
(11)"怎么着？没有校车？他怎么上学呀？" "来，今天我开车送他去。"	What? The school bus is canceled? How will he go to school? O.K., let me take him to school today.
*自从我们搬到城外，他上学来，我开车送他去	NA

B.4.b. As responses to questions, sentences without lai are used as answers in the following contexts:

S-ma type question construction

(12)“你开车送他去吗？” “我开车送他去。”	"Do you take him there by car?" "Yes, I do."

Question Word type question construction

(13)“谁开车送他去？” “我开车送他去。”	"Who takes him there by car?" "I do."

Choice type question construction

(14)“你开车送他去，他开车送他去？” “我开车送他去。”	"Do you or does he take him there by car?" "I do."

For all of the above questions, the lai, S form is not used, but it is used in response to the following types of requests and expressions of willingness:

Direct request

(15)“文斌你开车送他去吧？”	"How about taking him there by car, Wen-bin?"
“来，我开车送他去。”	"O.K., I will."
(16)“我希望你开车送他去！”	"I hope you will drive him there."
“来，我开车送他去。”	"All right, I will."

Indirect request

(17)“我有事不能开车送他，他自己又没车没法去，你能帮他想办法吗？”	"I have an engagement and cannot drive him. He does not have a car, so he cannot make it on his own. Could you help him to figure out a way to go there?"
“来，我开车送他去。”	"(Come,) I will take him there."
(18)“最后一班车已过去了，他怎么回去呀？”	"The bus had its last run already. How can he go back?"
“来，我开车送他去。”	"(Come,) I will take him there."

B.4.c. Sentences with lai indicate a commitment to an immediate action which is absent in sentences without lai. Therefore, when immediate action is suggested, lai may be used. If subsequent future action is suggested, lai is not used. For instance:

(19“舞会以后太晚了，那时候，公共汽车也没班了，他没车怎么回去呀？”	"After the ball, it will be too late; the buses will have stopped by then and he does not have a car. How will he go home?"
“没问题，我开车送他去。”	"I will take him home by car. It's no problem."
° “来，我开车送他去。”	NA °((Come I drive him home.)

(20)“广播报告火车误点三十分钟以上我赶不上考试了！”	Just now the radio reported a thirty minute or more delay on the train. I will miss my final examination. What shall I do?
(20)a“我开车送你去。”	I will take you there by car.
(20)b 来，我开车送你去。	Come, I will take you there by car.

Thus the use of lai as a single word sentence is limited. It expresses (1) that the speaker is committed to a particular course of action, (2) that a response to a request or a suggestion of a solution is following, and (3) that the action or suggestion is to be implemented immediately.

B.5. lai is often used in repeated form. For instance:

(21)a 来， (21)b 来，来，来	我再敬你一杯。	Let me propose another toast to you.
(22)a 来， (22)b 来，来，来	大家请随便。	Please help yourselves.

C. Compare hao (好) and lai.

C.1. hao, as illustrated in the following dialogue, functions differently than lai:

(23)甲： “明天早晨你先到这儿来，我们在家把草案看一遍，再一块从这儿去开会。”	A: "Tomorrow morning you come here, we will go over the draft at home. Then we will go together to the meeting from here."
乙： “好，就那么办。”	B: "Fine, will do."

Here hao is used by Speaker B to indicate his acquiescence. It is therefore an evaluation and an opinion of Speaker A's proposal. Linguistically it is the comment of a T-C structure where the T is omitted:

	TOPIC	COMMENT
(23)b	乙：(明天……开会)	好

lai implies a suggestion, not agreement. It signals that there is a suggestion or response forthcoming and serves to indicate that the speaker is offering the following suggestion or recommendation.

(24)甲：“我们得赶一赶，把这工作作完”。	A: "We have to speed up and wrap up this thing."
乙：“来，我们一块动手”。	B: "O.K., let's start together."
丙：“来，把工作分三部分我们三个人一个人做一部分．用不了多久就可以完了”。	C: "O.K., let's divide it into three parts. Each of us will handle one part. It should be finished in no time.

Therefore, the single word sentence usage of lai is Component I in a compound sentence consisting of at least two components:

	Component I	Component II
(24)b	来	我们一块动手
(24)c	来	把工作……可以完了

D.2. hao does not have a semantic relationship with what follows.

For instance:

(25)甲：“明天请你早点来好吗？”	A: "Please come earlier tomorrow. Is that O.K.?"
乙：“好。几点？”	B: "Fine. What time?"

Here hao is a comment on Speaker A's proposal, "come earlier tomorrow," while jidian (几点) is an entirely independent entity.

lai serves to indicate that the speaker is offering the suggestion or recommendation.

(26)甲：“文斌请你给小王看看小王的作业”。 A: "Wen-bin, please take a look at Xiao Wang's work."

乙：“来，我给你看看”。 B: "I will take a look at it for you."

Here wo gei ni kankan is not a response to Speaker A, but is directed to Xiao Wang.

D.3. In a context in which both hao and lai may be used at the beginning of a response, such as the example below, the difference between them is very subtle.

(27)甲：“小王这个数字题太难了，你能帮小王一下吗？” A: "This math problem is too difficult. Can you give Xiao Wang some help on it?

(27)乙：a.“好，我帮他忙”。 B: "O.K., I will help him."

(27)乙：b.“来，我给小王算”。 B: "Come. I will help Xiao Wang figure it out."

In this situation both hao and lai may be used, but there is a difference. Answer (a) with hao indicates the speaker's agreement or consent to what is requested. It is then followed by a restatement of the request, i.e., " 我帮他忙 " from " 你能帮他忙吗 "

Answer (b) indicates the speaker's commitment to a particular course of action in response to the request and a statement of what that commitment entails, i.e., " 我给小王算 "

E. Compare lai and nemme (那么).

E.1. nemme has a dual function. It comments upon the statement of Speaker A, which precedes it, and signals the suggestion that follows. For example:

(28)甲：“这个问题太难了，我作了一早晨也找不出解答。”	A: "This problem is entirely too difficult. I worked on it the whole morning, but could not find the solution."
乙：“那么，找文斌帮忙。”	B: "If that's the case, you should ask Wen-bin for help."

lai has only single-direction-function: to signal the following suggestions.

E.2. nemme must always be followed by a statement (suggestion or otherwise) to be considered a full and independent sentence. lai may be used alone.

(28) 甲：“这个问题……解答”	
* 乙：“那么”	NA

F. Compare hao, lai, and nemme.

F.1. Since hao was originally a comment, it may have a negative version. Neither lai nor nemme may have negative versions.

F.2. hao has a question form: A "--- 好不好？" or "--- 好吗？"

nemme may not be an answer to a question or comment on a statement.

lai in this usage may not have a question form.

F.3. hao and nemme themselves do not bring out the immediacy of what follows, while lai does.

F.4. Though hao does not always precede a suggestion, nemme does. When they do precede suggestions, neither implies that it be implemented immediately, as lai does.

29 The Usage of V-lai/qu/zou V- 来/去/走

I. Forms:

Topic V-lai/V-qu/V-zou (NP)

II. Examples:

A.	从南边飞来一只燕子。	A swallow flew here from the south.
B.	忽然这只大鸟飞走了。	Suddenly, this big bird flew away.
C.	请你带来一本字典。	Please bring a dictionary with you.
D.	他把你的书拿走了。	He walked away with your book.
E.	他沏来一壶很好的茶。	He made and brought here a pot of excellent tea.
F.	你炖来的鸡不一会儿都叫我们吃完了。	It took no time for us to finish eating the chicken you made and brought to us.

III. Notes:

A.1. V-lai, V-qu, and V-zou are members of verb compounds (V-V) with directional endings, in other words directional verb compounds. These compounds share a common feature: the direction conveyed by the particular ending (-lai, -qu, -zou) is in reference to the speaker: -lai a motion toward the speaker or speaker's location, -qu a motion away from the speaker to a particular destination either explicitly stated or understood, and -zou a motion away from the speaker without consideration of destination.

A.2. The first verb component in the compound is a motion verb, either transitive or intransitive. When the perfomance of the motion requires a change of location for the actor, or the object, these three directional endings are used.

A.3. There are altogether 4 different categories of these directional compounds:

Category (A). The first verb is an intransitive verb of motion. The actor changes locations in carrying out the motion. Examples are fei (飞), piao (漂), and pao (跑).

Category (B). The first verb is a transitive verb of motion. It requires the actor to change locations. The object also changes location as a result of the performance of the motion. Examples are tui (推), dai (带), and song (送).

Category (C). The first verb is a transitive verb of motion. It does not require the actor to change places in performing the action. The object also is not involved in location change as a result of the first verb. Examples are dun (炖), cheng (盛), and jian (煎).

Category (D). The first verb is a transitive verb of motion. It does not require the actor to change locations in performing the action. However, the object is involved in a change of location as a result of the action. Examples are reng (扔), ji (寄), and fang (放).

B.1. The directional compound of (A) is composed of Vi+lai, Vi+qu, or Vi+zou as in the following:

(1)	他们跑来拿东西。	They ran over here to get these things.
(2)	他看到一朵朵的花顺着溪流飘走了。	He saw the falling blossoms float away in the creek.
(3)	他听屋里有声音，便进去了。	He heard noises in the room and so he went in.

With an intransitive verb as the first component of the compound, the actor moves in the direction indicated by either -lai, -qu, or -zou, while performing the action of the Vi. DV=

B.2. (A)type verbs are unique in that they may be used as VPs in the following structures: "NP(subject)VP" or the inverted "NP VP (subject)":

(4)a NP (subject) 一片红枫叶 VP 漂来了 A red maple leaf floats over here.

(4)b VP 漂来了 NP (subject) 一片红枫叶 " "

Other examples are:

(5)a 两只小船慢慢的荡来了 two small boats sail over here.

(5)b 慢慢的荡来了两只小船 " "

(6)a 两三个小孩子向东岸游去了。 Two or three children swam towards the eastern shore.

(6)b 向东岸游去了两三个小孩子。 " "

In the inverted usage in each case above, the NP (subject) must not be a personal pronoun.

(7)a 我向东岸游去了。 I swam towards the eastern shore.

(7)b* 向东岸游去了我 NA

Nor may it be a specified noun:

(8)a 这个小孩子向山下滑去了。 This child is skiing down the the hill. This child skied down the hill.

(8)b* 向山下滑去了这个小孩子 NA

B.3. The (A)type verb compounds may occur in "split form" with a place word between the 2 components:

进去 ⟶ 进屋去 enter the room

出来 ⟶ 出城来 come out of the city

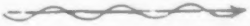
Many of them may accommodate another directional indicator and may be converted into a compound with 3 verbs, such as 走上来 , 'walk up here,' 'walk up here,' 走下去 'walk down there,' etc.

C.1. (B)type verbs are composed of Vt+lai, Vt+qu, and Vt+zou.

(9) 他推来了一辆车。 He pushed a cart here.

(10) 你拉走一头牛。 Pull a cow away from you.

The characteristics of type (B) compounds are that the action of the motion verb and the direction of the directional verb are closely linked so that the actor and the object are both involved in spatial changes and that the two verbal elements--the motion verb and the directional ending--are carried out simultaneously. We may represent this phenomenon in the following way:

DV =  In (9) 他推来一辆车 'He pushed a cart over here,' 他 'he' exerts 推 the 'push' towards the speaker's on 一辆车 'a cart.' The result is that both the actor and the object move toward the speaker.

C.2. (B) verbs are readily converted to a ba construction.

(9) 他推来了一辆车 ⟶ 他把一辆车推来了

(10) 你拉来一头牛 ⟶ 你把一头牛拉来

D.1. (C)type directional compounds are similar to those of type (B) in that they are composed of Vt+lai, Vt+qu, or Vt+zou:

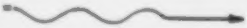
(11) 他炖来了一锅肉。

[He made and brought a pot of stew here.]

He made a pot of stew and brought it here.

(12) 作来一篇文章给他看看。

Compose an essay and bring it here for him to read.

However, as opposed to (B)type, the action of the transitive motion verb and the direction of the directional verb do not form a single verb entity. The actions of the two components only occur in close sequence rather than simultaneously. Thus the performance of the action verb must come before the performance of the direction verb. The actor performs an action on an object and then the object moves in the specified direction. Both the actor and the object move in accordance with the directional verb. We may represent this phenomenon in the following way: DV = 

D.2. The compound itself which is understood in the original statement is derived from the following structure^1 + structure^2 = structure^3.

Structure^1: NP^1 - V^1 - Object

他 写 信

He writes letters.

Structure^2: NP^1 - ba - V^1 de Obj-V^2-lai/qu/zou

他 把 写 的 信 寄 来

He mailed here the letter he wrote.

Structure^3: NP-V^1-lai/etc. Obj.

他写来 信

He wrote a letter and mailed it here.

D.3. A translation of (C)type verbs requires the addition of a verb, as illustrated above. Generally, transitive verbs such as "to bring," "to take along," etc., are used.

(13) 他作来一首诗。 He wrote and brought over here a poem (by hand).

(14) 他做来一箱衣服。 He made and brought here a suitcase full of clothes(by car).

(15) 他挖走一棵花。 He dug up and took along with him a flowering plant (by hand).

(16) 他挖走一棵树。 He dug up and took away a tree (by truck).

E.1. (D)type compounds are also composed of transitive verbs and directional verbs. Examples are reng, fang, etc.

(17) 他扔来一个球。 He threw a ball over here.

(18) 他放走一群鸟。 He let loose these birds.

The unique point is that the components of the (D)type compounds have different subjects. The subject of the first component is the actor of the sentence and the subject of the second component (-lai/-qu/-zou) is the object in the phrase. In(17),the subject of 扔 is 他 and the subject of 来 is 球 . In (18), the subject of 放 is 他 and the subject of 走 is 鸟 . Thus the actor of the sentence remains in one location, while the action of the first component is exerted on the object and causes the object alone to move in a specified direction (lai/qu/zou). We may represent this phenomenon in the following way: $DV = \frac{\text{Actor} \;\sim\!\sim\!\sim}{\text{Obj}} \longrightarrow$

E.2. The structure with (D)type compounds may also be converted to Ba construction:

(17) 他扔来一个球 ⟶ 他把一个球扔来了

(18) 他放走一群鸟 ⟶ 他把一群鸟放走了

E.3. The translation of structures with type (D) is "Verb - Object - here/there/away" as shown in (17) and (18).

F. The characteristics of these four types of directional verbal compounds are summarized in the following chart:

	CATEGORIES			
CHARACTERISTICS	A	B	C	D
First Component:				
Vi	+	-	-	-
Vt	-	+	+	+
Location change:				
ACTOR only	+	-	-	-
ACTOR + OBJECT	-	+	+	-
OBJECT only	-	-	-	+
Subject of components:				
ACTOR-ACTOR	+	-	+	-
ACTOR-OBJECT	-	+	-	+
Time element of the performance of the two components:				
simultaneously interwoven	+	+	-	-
sequential arrangement	-	-	+	+
Structural transformation:				
inversion	+	-	-	-
ba construction	-	+	+	+

30 The Usage of V- laizhe V- 来着

I. Form:

VP laizhe

II. Examples:

A. 跟宝姐姐玩来着	playing with Baojiejie
B. 妹妹背地里说我来着	Meimei, you talked about me behind my back.
C. (你这妹妹)原有玉来着	(She) had a piece of jade originally.

III. Notes:

A. laizhe (来着) is suffixed to a VP at the end of a sentence construction to indicate that there has been an event which was in progress or that a continuing state has existed during a period before the statement was made.

B.1. When laizhe is suffixed to an action verb phrase, it indicates that the action had once been in progress. For instance:

(1) 老张一听有人进来，忙把工作放下出来看是谁。	When Lao Zhang heard that someone had come in, he put aside his work and went to see who it was.
"你干什么来着老张？我没打扰你吧？" 老李走进来说。	"What have you been doing? I hope I am not disturbing you," Lao Li said, walking into the room.

Here 你干什么来着 refers to the period immediately before the speaker came into the room.

(2) 我前天还特地问他来着。	The day before yesterday, I was specially asking about him.

Here 问他来着 is an action that took place on the "day before yesterday."

(3) 当日你父亲怎么教训你来着？ Formerly, how did your father instruct you?

Here, 教训你来着 is an event that took place a long time ago. Thus VP-laizhe may refer to the immediate past as in (1), to the recent past as in (2), or to the distant past as in (3).

B.2. When the VP refers to a condition or situation, this pattern means that the condition or situation existed during a certain period of time preceding the statement. Again, VP-laizhe may refer to the immediate or distant past.

(4) 我刚才还戴着来着，这会儿就找不着了。 I was wearing it a moment ago, now I can't find it.

(5) 上礼拜他还在这儿来着，怎么突然搬了？ Last week he was here. How come he suddenly moved away?

(6) 那块玉在十几年前是我替他收着来着。 I kept that piece of jade for him about ten years ago.

B.3. The VP may be a simple verb such as war (玩) 'to play,' shou (收) 'to safekeep,' or a compound verb such as xiuxi (休息) 'to rest,' jiangyan (讲演) 'to lecture,' or xiezi (写字) 'to write,' zuofan (做饭) 'to cook,' etc.

B.4. Although VP-laizhe always occurs at the end of a sentence structure, the sentence structure may be further used in a longer structure.

(7) 我们看来着，可是没看出什么有意思的地方。 We did read it, but did not find any interesting points.

(8) 你干什么来着，让他跑了！ What have you been doing? Let him get away!

C. Compare VP-*laizhe* and VP-*le*.

C.1. VP-*le* emphasizes the completion aspect of VP; VP-*laizhe* emphasizes the continuation aspect of VP.

(9)a 我回来以前你干什么来着? What were you doing before I returned?

(9)b 我回来以前，你干什么了? What did you do before I returned?

C.2. VP-*le* may be used in the future; VP-*laizhe* may not.

(10)我作了功课就来。 I will come when I finish my work.

(11)我作功课来着，可是没作完。 I was working on it, but I did not finish it.

C.3. In VP-*le* the VP may not be in V-*zhe* form; in VP-*laizhe* the VP may be in V-*zhe* form.

(12)他戴了眼镜就出去了。 He put his eyeglasses on his nose, then left.

• 他戴来着了眼镜就出去了 NA

(13)他戴着眼镜来着这会儿他找不着了。 He was wearing his glasses. Now he cannot find them.

C.4. In VP-*le*, if the VP is a verb with an object, the aspect marker *le* may be suffixed either after the verb or after the object. In VP-*laizhe*, when the VP is a verb with an explicitly stated object, *laizhe* must be suffixed after the entire VP-Verb+Object.

(14)a 他吃饭了 He ate...

(14)b 他吃了饭了 " "

(15)a 他吃来着 He was eating...

(15)b 他吃饭来着 " "

* 他吃来着饭 NA

D. Compare VP-laizhe and VP-ne.

D.1. VP-laizhe refers to a continuing condition or action in the time before the statement is made. VP-ne refers to a continued condition or action at the time the statement is made.

(16) 你没回来的时候，我吃饭来着。 Before you returned, I was eating.

(17) 你回来的时候，我吃饭呢。 I was eating when you returned.

Therefore, VP-laizhe may not be preceded by adverbs zheng (正), hai (还) or verb zai. VP-ne may be preceded by them.

(18)a 他正说话呢。 He is talking right now.

(18)b 他还说话呢。 He is still talking.

(18)c 他在说话呢。 He is talking right now.

* 他正/在说话来着 NA

° 他还说话来着 NA° (He was even talking.)

E. Comparison of V-zhe and V-laizhe.

E.1. V-zhe may be used independently only in imperative usage, command, or request.

(19)a 站着！ Stand there! Keep standing!

(19)b 等着，好吗？ Wait, O.K.?

(19)c 我等着！ Let me wait for it!

V-*laizhe* may be used independently as a declarative, but not an imperative.

(20)a 他看书来着。 He was reading (it).

(20)b 他写来着。 I was writing it.

E.2. V-*zhe* may be used in the first component of a complex sentence describing the manner in which the second component (main VP) is carried out.

(21) 他拿着东西跑出去了。 He ran out holding a lot of things.

V-*laizhe* is not used in this way. Instead, it is used in Component I in a compound sentence describing the progress as a continuing state of an action or a condition.

(22) 我刚用来着，怎么不见了? I had just been using it, where did it go?

E.3. When used with *ne* in form V-*zhe* *ne* or form V-*zhe* Object *ne*, V-*zhe* indicates a particular action (V) is/was going on at the time the statement was made. V-*laizhe* may not be used with *ne* and it indicates the action (V) has been or had been going on up to the point when the statement was made.

E.4. -*zhe* is suffixed to functive verbs only. In addition to FVs, -*laizhe* may be suffixed to SVs.

(23)a 拿着! hold it!

* 漂亮着! NA

(23)b 干净来着 had been clean

(23)c 糊涂来着 had been confused

F. In summary:

	VP-*laizhe*	VP-*le*	VP-*ne*	V-*zhe*
VP	Affirmative only	Affirmative	Affirmative or negative	Affirmative or negative
	FV or SV	FV or SV	FV or SV in *hai* VP *ne*	FV only
	V-*zhe*-*laizhe*	V-*zhe* never occurs	V-*zhe*-*ne*	
Time element	Past only	Past, future	Past, present, future	Past, present, future
Aspect	Continuation	Completion	Continuation	Continuation
Affix position	After entire VP	After verb or entire VP	After entire VP	After verb only

31 The Usage of SV-le qu le   SV- 了 去 了

I. Forms:

SV-le qu le

II. Examples:

屋子大了去了。	This room is far too big.(LIN)
人数多了去了。	Far too many people. (LIN)
那个湖深了去了。	That lake is bottomless. (YALE)
他住的地方远了去了。 两天也赶不到。	His place is too far, one could not make it in two days.

III. Notes:

A. The form 'le qu le' is a suffix to stative verbs meaning 'immeasurably SV.'

B. SVs which can have 'le qu le' suffix must be single syllabic words.

B.1. SV - le qu le

(1) 大了去了 (CORRECT)

* 聪明了去了 (NA)

B.2. 'le qu le' expresses limitless or immeasurability of the quantity or quality represented by the SV. Therefore it cannot be suffixed to yinci

(2) 他的钱多了去了。 [His money is far too much.] He has a lot of money.(CORRECT)

* 他的钱少了去了 (NA)

(3) 这棵树高了去了。 [This tree is immeasurably tall]. This tree is very tall.(CORRECT)

* 这棵树矮了去了 (NA)

C. SV suffixes 'le qu le' and 'jile' compared.

C.1. The SV to which 'le qu le' is suffixed must be a single syllable SV, while that to which 'jile' is suffixed has no restriction.

(4) 好極了 (CORRECT)

(5) 好了去了 (CORRECT)

(6) 聰明極了 (CORRECT)

* 聰明了去了 (NA)

C.2. The SV to which 'le qu le' is suffixed must express yang quality concept, while there is no restriction for 'jile.'

(7) 大極了 (CORRECT)

(8) 大了去了 (CORRECT)

(9) 小極了 (CORRECT)

* 小了去了 (NA)

C.3. SV with 'le qu le' cannot be used to modify other nouns. It can serve only as an independent comment; while the SV-jile form can be used in either function.

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
(10)	屋子	大了去了	(CORRECT)
(11)	屋子	大極了	(CORRECT)

	Modifier	Modified	
*	大了去了	的屋子	(NA)
(12)	大極了	的屋子	(CORRECT)

C.4. 'SV-jile' can be shortened to 'SV-ji." But 'SV-le qu le' cannot be shortened.

D. 'youdeshi 有的是 '-le qu le' 了去了 and '-jile' 極了 compared.

D.1. youdeshi is a verb construction, a free form. The others are suffixes, bound forms.

D.2. youdeshi refers to quantity. The others can refer to either quantity or quality. For example:

(13) 钱有的是	Quantity
(14) 钱多了去了	Quantity
(15) 钱多极了	Quantity
(16) 能力强极了	Quality
(17) 质料好了去了	Quality

D.3. There is no appreciable difference in quantity indicated by youdeshi, duolequle or duojile. However, there is a slight difference in the attitude of the speaker. The suffix '-jile' gives the most colorless statement. On the other hand, youdeshi indicates either that there is a sufficient amount of something or that there is certainly a large supply of something which is contrary to expectation. Finally, 'le qu le' indicates that there is an almost unlimited amount of something.

32 The Usage of lian NP^1 dai NP^2 连 NP^1 带 NP^2

I. Forms:

A. lian N^1 dai N^2

B. lian NP^1 dai NP^2

II. Examples:

A.1.	连人带车一块儿翻了。	The bus overturned with all of its passengers.
A.2.	连纸带笔我花了一块钱。	I spent about $1.00 for both paper and pen.
A.3.	连手带脚一块捆起来。	Tie him up, feet and hands together.
B.1.	连你要的纸带他要的笔都买来了。	I bought both the paper you wanted and the pen he asked for. (Not forgetting anything)
B.2	连坐车的带坐飞机的一共三十五名旅客。	There are altogether 35 passengers, including those who came by car and those who came by plane.
B.3.	连好的带坏的我们都要。	We accept everything, good and bad.

III. Notes:

A. Essentially, the structure lian N^1 dai N^2 means 'including N^1 and N^2, and is a nominal construction.

B. The nouns to be used in the positions N^1 and N^2 may be:

a. The components of an entity:

(1)	连名带姓	(given name and surname) of a name
(2)	连人带马	(rider and horse) of an action (of riding)
(3)	连本带利	(capital and interest) of investment

b. The representative elements of an entity:

(4)	连头带尾	(head and tail) of a whole fish
(5)	连校长带工友	(principal and janitor) of the entire school staff

B.2. In Form A, N^1 and N^2 are simple nouns, whether they are single syllable words or disyllable words.

(6)	连根带叶一起拔。	Pull it out, roots and all.
(7)	连公公带婆婆都见了。	I met both my father-in-law and my mother-in-law.

B.3. Form A, lian N^1 dai N^2, is always used in the topic position of a construction.

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
	lian N^1 dai N^2	VP	
(8)	连汤带水	都倒了	I poured it all out, soup and all.
(9)	连锁钥匙	都丢了	He lost both his lock and his key.
(10)	连骨头带肉	都扔了	He threw away everything, meat as well as bones.
(11)	连男带女	都抓走了	They arrested everybody, both male and female.

Furthermore, in the topic position, it may either be the agent of an action ((12) and (13)) or the recipient of an action ((14) and (15)).

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
	Agent of Action	Action	
(12)	连你带我	都得去	You and I should both go.
(13)	连校长带工友	都喜欢他	From the principal to the janitor (of the school), all like him.

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
	Recipient of Action	Action	
(14)	连你带我	他都骂到了	He reprimanded both you and me.
(15)	连校长带工友	他都不喜欢	He likes no one, from the principal to the janitor (of the school).

B.4. This structure may not be used as a comment.

* 他吃的鱼连头带尾	NA
* 他的鱼连头带尾	NA

B.5. In addition to being used as a topic, this structure is used to modify another noun as in NP de N. For instance:

	lian N^1 dai N^2	de N	
	NP	de N	
(16)	连皮带馅	的 饺子	(dumplings with both wrappers and fillings) complete dumplings
(17)	连筋带骨	的 肉	meat with both bones and tendons

lian N^1 dai N^2 may also be used as an adverbial phrase to modify a verb or a VP. For instance:

(18)	这条鱼他连头带尾的都吞下去了。	(He swallowed the fish,head and tail.) He swallowed the fish completely.
(19)	他总是连名带姓的称呼人，真不礼貌。	He always addresses others by their complete names(surname and given name together). It is really impolite.

B.6. Because the structure expresses the entirety of an entity, adverbs which convey such a concept, such as dou (都), quan (全), and zhengger de (整个的), are often used in the comment.

C.1. Form B differs from Form A in that Form B may accomodate a variety of NP constructions. Form B is less compact than Form A, and for this reason Form B is less dramatic an expression than Form A. Compare the following:

(20) 连车上的乘客带汽车都翻到山峡里去了。 The bus overturned and rolled down a steep cliff with all the passengers on the bus.

(II.A.1) 连人带车都翻了。 The bus overturned with all of its passengers.

Sentence (20) is more descriptive than (II.A.1), but it lacks the dramatic impact of (II.A.1).

C.2. Form B may allow a wider range of NP to be used in the position of N^1 and N^2 than can Form A. Compare the following:

(21) 连我十年前投资的本钱带这十年的利钱一共多少？ How much does it come to all together, the capital investment I put in ten years ago and the interest accumulated these ten years?

(22) 连本带利一共多少？ How much does it come to all together, the capital and interest?

D. lian N^1 dai N^2 and N^1 gen N^2 compared:

D.1. lian N^1 dai N^2 may be used in Topic position (23), a modifier of a NP (25), and a modifier of a VP (27). N^1 gen N^2 may be used in the topic position (24), modifier of a NP (26), and object of a verb (29).

(23) 连纸带笔他都要。 (correct)

(24) 纸跟笔他都要。 (correct)

(25) 连笔带纸的价钱是多少？ (correct)

(26) 纸跟笔的价钱是多少？ (correct)

(27) 连名带姓的招呼人。 (correct)

* 名跟姓的招呼人 NA

* 他要的是连纸带笔 NA

(28) 他要的是纸跟笔。 (correct)

* 他要买连纸带笔 NA

(29) 他要买纸跟笔。 (correct)

D.2. lian N^1 dai N^2 constitutes a single entity; N^1 gen N^2 at times may not.

(30) 连纸带笔的价钱是多少？
价钱 'price' is the sum of 纸 and 笔 .

(31) 纸跟笔的价钱是多少？
价钱 of 纸 and 价钱 of 笔 are separately requested.

(32) 纸跟笔的价钱一共多少？
价钱 is the sum of 纸 and 笔 (same as (30)).

D.3. lian N^1 dai N^2 Form A of the variables N^1 and N^2 are either both components or representative elements of one entity. N^1 gen N^2 does not necessarily maintain such a relationship between N^1 and N^2.

(33) 老张买的房子跟李小姐租的车你都看见了吗？

老张买的房子 and 李小姐租的车 are entirely unrelated.

33 The Usage of lian SV^1 dai SV^2 连 SV^1 带 SV^2

I. Forms:

lian SV^1 dai SV^2

II. Examples:

A. 连轻带重的行李都可以交给脚行。	Both light and heavy luggage may be given to the porter.
B. 连新带旧的衣服包了一包他拿去了。	He wrapped both old and new clothes in one bundle, and took it with him.
C. 连好带坏的一起送来，我自己挑。	Send me everything, both good and bad; I will make the selection myself.
D. 连大带小他差不多用了两打。	She used about two dozen, both large and small.
E. 连老带少对这本书的评语都很好。	Both the young and the old gave this book a good review.

III. Notes:

A. In this form, the structure lian SV^1 dai SV^2 (连 SV^1 带 SV^2) serves as a connector of two qualities or descriptions. Generally, this structure may be translated as 'SV^1 and SV^2,' 'both SV^1 and SV^2,' 'SV^1 as well as SV^2,' etc.

B. The structure lfan SV^1 dai SV^2 is a contracted form of lian SV-N^1 dai SV-N^2; that is, N^1 and N^2 being modified by SVs. As a rule, when the Ns are identical and when they are understood or mentioned in the immediate context, SV-N may be contracted to SV in certain "formula" type structures, or contracted to SV de in others. For example:

lian SV-N^1 dai SV-N^2 → lian SV(-N^1) dai SV (-N^2) → lian SV^1 dai SV^2

(1) 连红花带紫花

→ 连红(　)带紫(　)　　Both red and purple flowers.

= 连红带紫

(2) 连肥肉 带瘦肉　　Both fat and lean meat.

→ 连肥(　)带瘦(　)

= 连肥带瘦

(3) 连新的车带旧的车　　Both new and old cards.

→ 连新的(　)带旧的(　)

→ 连新(　)带旧(　)

= 连新带旧

B.2. In lian SV^1 dai SV^2, the SV^1 and SV^2 may be expressions of similar kinds of emotion, attitudes, or states of mind.

(4) 连悔带恨	being both regretful and resentful
(5) 连小心带谨慎	being both careful and cautious
(6) 连笨带懒	being both lazy and slow

B.3. The variables SV^1 and SV^2 may also be expressions of two opposing qualities or two extremes.

(7) 连长带短	long and short
(8) 连高带低	high and low
(9) 连大带小	big and small

B.4. In lian SV^1 dai SV^2, the SVs are either both single syllable or both disyllable.

(10) 連急带病	being both worried and sick
(11) 連粗心带大意	being both reckless and careless
(12) 連新带旧	both new and old
* 連新带古旧	NA
* 連急带病苦	NA
* 連焦急带病	NA

Where two qualities cannot be expressed using the same number of syllables, the qualities are converted into SV-de, thereby converting the phrase into a NP.

* 連聪明带笨	NA
(13) 連聪明的带笨的	both the smart and the stupid (correct)
* 連便宜带貴	NA
(14) 連便宜的带貴的	both inexpensive ones and expensive ones. (correct)

They must be consistently affirmative.

B.5. lian SV^1 dai SV^2 may be used to modify a noun or a verb.

(15) 連大带小的车都在这儿停。	Both large and small cars should park here.
(16) 連悔带恨的把他送走了。	We got him away with regret.

B.6. This pattern may also be used as the first component in a compound sentence in which Components I and II maintain a cause and effect relationship.

	COMPONENT I (cause)	COMPONENT II (effect)	
	lian X dai Y	VP	
(17)	连悔带恨	就病了。	He fell sick because of his being both regretful and resentful.
(18)	连粗心带大意	就出了车祸。	He was involved in a car accident because of his recklessness and carelessness.

B.7. This structure may also be used in apposition with a noun.

(19) 这些观众，连老带少都喜欢这部电影 Both young and old, this audience likes this movie.

(20) 这些花连红的带黄的都非常好看。 Those flowers, both red and yellow, are very pretty.

(21) 这些车连新带旧一共多少？ How many are there of those cars, both new and old?

C. lian SV^1 dai SV^2 and others compared.

C.1.a. When SV^1 and SV^2 represent two expressions of similar emotion, you SV^1 you-SV^2 (又.... 又 ....) may be used instead of lian....dai.....

(22) 连脑带恨 → 又脑又恨 both annoyed and regretful

(23) 连小心带谨慎 → 又小心又谨慎 both careful and cautious

C.1.b. When SV^1 and SV^2 represent two extremes, you.....you..... (有 .... 有 ....) may be substituted for lian....dai....

(24) 连大带小 ⟶ 有大有小 both large and small

(25) 连好带坏 ⟶ 有好有坏 both good and bad

C.2. lian SV^1 dai SV^2 may modify a NP; you....you.... and you....you.... may also modify an NP.

(26) 连悔带恨的人 people filled with resentment and regrets.

又悔又恨的人

有悔有恨的人

C.3. In lian SV^1 dai SV^2 and you....you.... (有 .... 有 ....), the SVs must be consistently affirmative. In you.....you..... (又 .... 又 ....), SVs do not have to be so.

(27) 连肥带瘦 both fat and lean (correct)

有肥有瘦 (correct)

又不肥又不瘦 (correct)

* 连不肥带不瘦 NA

* 有不肥有不瘦 NA

C.4. lian SV^1 dai SV^2 may not be used as a comment; you....you.... and you....you.... may be a comment.

(28) * 他连悔带恨。 NA

他又悔又恨。 (correct)

他有悔有恨。 (correct)

C.5. In *lian* SV^1 *dai* SV^2 and *you*....*you*.... (有 .... 有 ....), the SVs may be N or NP, and SV from SV-N. In *you*....*you*.... (又 .... 又 ....), the SVs may not be N.

(29)	连大(车)带小(车)	both big and small cars (correct)
	有大(车)有小(车)	(correct)
*	又大车又小车	NA

C.6. Both *lian* SV^1 *dai* SV^2 and *you*....*you*.... (又 .... 又 ....) may modify a VP. But *you*....*you*.... (有 .... 有 ....) may not modify a VP.

(30)	这块肉连肥带瘦的切。	This meat must be carved, fat and lean together.
(31)	他把这个菜又快又干净的盛了一大碗。	He filled a big bowl of this dish quickly and neatly.
*	有快有慢的写了一大张	NA

C.7. In *lian* SV^1 *dai* SV^2 and *you*....*you*.... (有 .... 有 ....), the SVs must be consistently single or multisyllable words. But *you*....*you*.... (又 .... 又 ....) need not be consistent.

(32)	又大又高	(correct)
(33)	又高又好看	(correct)
(34)	又好看又静	(correct)
(35)	有大有小	(correct)
*	有高大有小	NA
*	有大有渺小	NA

34 The Usage of lian X dai Y 连 X 带 Y

I. Forms:

A. lian VP^1 dai VP^2

B. lian S^1 dai S^2

II. Examples:

A.1. 连哭带骂了吵一整天。	Crying and cursing, he carried on the whole day!
A.2. 连洗带刷弄了一天才干净。	By washing and scrubbing, she worked on it the whole day and finally got it clean.
B.1. 连替你送信带替他买东西整整用了十块钱。	Including mailing a letter for you and buying something for him, she altogether used $10.00.
B.2. 连你说带我劝他才愿意。	Not until after you explained it to him and I exhorted him did he agree.

III. Notes:

A. The variables X and Y in lian X dai Y (连 X 带 Y) are verbs, VPs, or T-Cs, and the whole structure serves as a connector of the two actions carried out by the same agent or carried out simultaneously.

B.1. In Form A, X and Y are simple verbs--whether single syllable or disyllable. Furthermore, X and Y do not have to be consistent in syllable numbers.

(1) 连吃带犒劳	eating and stuffing (one's mouth)
(2) 连嘘嘘带喘	panting and breathing (heavily)
(3) 连胡噜带揉搓	smoothing and kneading

An examination of the meanings of V^1 and V^2 reveals the following relationship between them:

a. Related actions:

嘘	喘	related actions in panting
洗	刷	related actions in cleaning

b. Related actions associated with the general exprssion of a particular state of mind:

说	笑	associated with having a relaxed and enjoyable time
气	恼	associated with anger

B.2. Most complex verbs, such as V-O compounds and Verb-directional endings, can be used. For instance:

(4) 连洗衣服带做饭 including laundering and cooking

(4) 连上来带下去 both going up and coming down

(6) 连开上来带开下去 both driving up and driving down

B.3. The complete structure lian X dai Y may be used in the topic position of a T-C construction.

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
	lian V^1 dai V^2	VP	
(7)	连抄带写	一共做了三天	Altogether she spent three days copying and writing.
(8)	连写带作	全由你负责	Both writing and composing will be your responsibility.

(9)	连吹带捧	真不要脸	His bragging and praising is shameless!
(10)	连抢带夺	不成样子	Grabbing and snatching, such undersirable behavior!

B.4. It can be used to modify a verb phrase:

	MODIFIER	de	MODIFIED	
	lian X dai Y	de	VP	
(11)	连说带劝	的	哄了他一大阵	She tried to pacify him by both talking and explaining to him for a long while.

B.5. This structure mav be used as a comment in the following ways:

B.5.a. As the first component in a compound sentence where the first and second components maintain a cause-and-effect relationship.

	COMPONENT I	COMPONENT II	
	lian V^1 dai V^2		
(12)	连道歉带解释	他才走	Only after I explained and apologized did he leave.
(13)	连推带拉	才把门开开	Only after I both pushed and pulled did I open the door.

B.5.b. As the comment of a T-C construction in a complex sentence.

	TOPIC		COMMENT	
	Topic	Comment		
	Subj.	lian V^1 dai V^1		
(14)	他	连抢带夺	太不客气了	Grabbing and snatching, he is extremely rude.

B.6. lian X dai Y cannot be used as the comment in a simple sentence:

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
(15)	我	去	(correct)
(16)	我	来	(correct)
*	我	连来带去	NA

Therefore, it cannot have particles such as le (了), gou (过), etc.

* 我连来带去了 NA

* 我连来了带去了 NA

* 我连来过带去过 NA

* 我连吃带着看呢 NA

However, lian V^1 dai V^1 may be followed by -zhe (着) as a verb suffix indicating manner. In this case the following clause must be a main verb clause.

VP^1 (with -zhe), VP^2 (main VP)

(17) 他站着吃饭。 He is having his meal standing up.

(18) 连打着带骂着总算把小王弄走。 He finally got Xian Wang away by cursing at him and spanking him.

(19) 连看着带守着唯恐丢了。 Watching it and guarding it, he only fears that he might lose it.

C. In Form (B), lian....dai.... serve as movable adverb sentence conjunctors. The whole structure works in the same way as form (A) does, with one exception: S^1 and S^2 in form (B) do not have to be related in either form or meaning as the Vs in form (A) do.

D. lian V dai V and you V you V compared.

D.1. lian V dai V may sometimes be replaced by you V you V (又 V 又 V).

(20)	连说带笑	又说又笑	talking and laughing
(21)	连气带恨	又气又恨	angered and resentful
(22)	连给你开车 带照顾门户	又给你开车 又照顾门户	to drive you and care for the house

D.2. In lian V dai V, the Vs must both be affirmative. In you V you V, they may either be both affirmative or both negative, or alternatively affirmative and negative.

(23)	连说带笑	(correct)
(24)	又说又笑	(correct)
*	连不说带不笑	NA
(25)	又不说又不笑	(correct)
*	连说带不说	NA
(26)	又说又不说	(correct)
*	连不气带气	NA
(27)	又不气又气	(correct)

D.3. In lian V^1 dai V^2, the V^1 and V^2 may be T-C and therefore can be used with two different topics. In you V you V, the Vs must be VPs and therefore are used with only one single topic.

(28)	连你说带他笑	(correct)
*	又你说又他笑	NA
(29)	连我给他开车带你给他看门	(correct)
*	又我给他开车又你给他看门	NA

Unless the structure *you* X *you* Y undergoes a change in word order, it can never be used with two subjects. Yet *lian* X *dai* Y may be used with two topics.

(30) 连他请带你催 (correct)

* 又他请又你催 NA

(31) 他又请你不催 (correct)

D.4. *lian* X *dai* Y indicates the close connection of the X and Y. *you* X *you* Y simply expresses'X and Y,'or'X in addition to Y.'

(32) 连涂带抹哪叫画画儿呀? He is there both wiping and smearing but certainly not writing (fusion of writing and smearing)

(33) 又买菜又洗衣服他真忙。 Shopping and cleaning, she is really busy.

E. *lian* X *dai* Y and *budan* X *ye*/*erqie* Y compared.

E.1. All *lian* X *dai* Y can be expressed in *budan* X *ye*/*erqie* Y (不但 X 也/而且 Y).

(34) 连吃带拿 不但吃而且拿 eating and talking/not only eating but talking too.

(35) 连给你开车 带给你看门 不但给你开车 而且给你看门 driving you around and caring for the house/not only driving you around but also caring for the house.

E.2. In *lian* X *dai* Y, the variables are equally stressed or equally expected. In *budan* X *ye*/*erqie* Y, the variable Y is more stressed than X, or X is normally expected.

35 The Usage of S-ma./!   S- 嘛 。/!

I. Form:

/S/ma ./!

II. Examples:

A.	赵大："……大妈，您今儿怎么啦也要去开会啦！"	Zhao Da: "Dama, what's the matter, you want to attend the meeting too?"
	大妈："……喜事嘛！"	Dama: "(Because) it's a celebration!"
B.	贾母道："你怎么恼了，连牌也不替我洗了？"	Jia Mu: "Are you angry at me? Why won't you deal the cards for me?"
	鸳鸯：拿起牌来笑道："奶奶不给钱嘛！"	Yuanyang, picking up the cards, smiled: "Because you don't pay me for it."
C.	这些东西都是他的嘛，当然可以拿走。	All these things are his. Of course he can take them away.
D.	甲："这个是铅笔"。	A: "This is a pencil."
	乙："这个是原子笔"。	B: "This is a ballpoint pen."
	（打开一看是原子笔）	(When they took off the top, it turned out that it indeed was a ballpoint pen.)
	乙："我说这个是原子笔嘛！"	B: "See! I told you so!
E.	知道多少写多少，那有什么难实事求事嘛！	Write as much as you know. Why is it difficult? One must be truthful!
F.	谁都喜欢这个，你也喜欢嘛！	Everyone likes this, even you!

III. Notes:

A.1. The sentence particle ma is often written as 吗 or 么 or even

吗 . Though it sounds like the question particle 吗, 嘛 is always followed by a dropping intonation (terminal contour) and is usually followed by an exclamation mark rather than a question mark.

A.2. As a sentence particle, 嘛 has several different functions. (a) It is used to signal that the statement to which it is suffixed offers an explanation for something stated either before or after, as in II A, B, C. (b) It is used to emphasize the assertion of the statement which preceded it, as in II D, E, F.

B.1. The first and most common function of suffix 嘛 to signal an explanation is illustrated in the following:

(1) 旁人笑他：“娶媳妇还带大枪？”	Others laughed at him: "You are getting married--why are you still carrying your rifle?"
大水说：“上级说的枪不离人，人不离枪嘛！”	Dashui replied: "Because the supervisor said that a rifle should never be separated from its user and vice versa!"
(2) 是啊，反正早晚你也会认识的嘛。	That's right, because you will get to know (him) sooner or later.
(3) 我本来也不配和他说话。他是主子姑娘我是奴才丫头嘛！	Certainly I do not have the privilege of speaking with her. She is the mistress and I am her slave!
(4) 甲：“怎么他就会受优待？”	A: "Why should he be specially treated?"
乙：“他是党员嘛！”	B: "Because he is a card-carrying party member!"

B.2. Statements with this usage of 嘛 may be converted into 因为 --- 的原故 . For instance:

(II-A) 大妈：“因为今天开会是一件喜事的原故”

(II-B) 鸳鸯："因为奶奶不给钱的原故

(II-C) 因为这些东西都是他的原故

(1)a 大水说："因为上级说的"枪不离人人不离枪的原故"

(2)a ……因为反正早晚你也会认识他的原故

(3)a 因为他是主子姑娘我是奴才丫头的原故

(4)a 因为他是党员的原故

B.3. The difference between 因为 --- 的原故 and /S/ma lies in the fact that the former is a "colorless," straightforward form used to introduce reasons, causes, etc., while the latter implies the speaker's subjective attitude that the explanation is a logical, natural deduction, or that the speaker takes pleasure in being able to offer such a surprising, clever explanation. Therefore, to explain fully and explicitly the attitude of the speaker, these statements may be supplemented by others such as the following:

(1)b 大水说："上级说的'枪不离人，人不离枪' 嘛！"(难道你们不知道！) "How could you not have known!"

(2)b 反正早晚你会认识嘛 (何必急呢!) "Why must you be so worried!"

(3)b 他是主子姑娘我是奴才丫头嘛！ (难道你不懂!) "Couldn't you understand it!"

(4)b 他是党员嘛 (这是理所当然的还用问!) "This is expected. Why must you ask!"

B.4. Furthermore, the statement with ma may be used as a follow-up statement in response to a remark, an answer to a question, or a comment to a narration. The preceding statement may be an expression which has an element of surprise, complaint, or doubt (in I-D). The pattern 因为 --- 的原故 does not have these implications. For example:

(5) 招收人：“你的名字是什么？”	"What is your name?" the recruiter asked.
应征人：“我叫王大一。”	"Wang Da Yi," said the applicant.
招收人：“你最近的工作是什么？在什么机构？”	"Where did you work last? In what capacity?"
应征人：“国貨公司，售貨員。”	"Salesman for Guohuo Department Store."
招收人：“为什么离职？”	"Why did you leave your job?"
应征人：“因为我丈夫调到这个地方的原故。”	"Because my husband transferred here."

The above dialogue between an interviewer and an applicant illustrates that a straightforward question calls for the matter-of-fact answer indicated by " 因为 --- 的原故 ."

(6) 甲：“大家都要作苦工，怎么他可以不作？”	A: "Everyone has to do hard labor. How come he can be exempted from it?"
乙：“他是董事长的大少爷嘛！”	B: "He is the son of the chairman of the governing board. That's why!"
(7) 甲：“那敌人的狼狈像怎么能教育您呢？”	A: "How can the embarrassing defeat of the enemy have educational value to you!"
乙：“哪……是这个……反面教育嘛。”	B: "Well...It's...negative education."

In (6) and (7) the statements with 嘛 reflect that their preceding expressions contain elements of complaint or doubt. Conversely, if answers in (5) are given with 嘛, the following is implied:

(5) 招收人："你的名字是什么？"	R: "What is your name?"
应征人"我叫王大一嘛！"	A: "My name is Wang Da Yi. (Don't you know it? Didn't I just tell you?)"
招收人："你最近的工作是什么？ 在什么机构？"	R: "Where did you work last? In what capacity?"
应征人："国货公司，售货员嘛！"	A: "(You know very well what I was)--a salesman in the Guohuo department store!"
招收人："为什么离职？"	R: "Why did you leave your job?"
应征人："我先生调到这儿来了嘛！"	A: "(I just told you) because my husband transferred here."

B.5. The /S/ to which 嘛 may be suffixed may be any of the following:

a. TOPIC COMMENT CONSTRUCTION:

(8) 甲："你怎么把书都扔了？"	A: "Why did you throw away all your books?"
T C	
乙："这些书 我都用不着了嘛。"	B: "I don't need them any more (that's why)!"

b. TOPICLESS CONSTRUCTION:

(9) 甲："你为什么把书都给他了？"	A: "Why did you give all your books to him?"
T C	
乙："都是他的嘛。"	B: "They are all his (that's why)."

c. (EV) NP

甲："她真不讲理，她在家看电视 叫我去打扫院子！"	A: "See how unreasonable he is! He is staying in the house watching TV but he sent me out here to clean the yard!"

乙：“妇女解放嘛！” B: "That's women's liberation!"

B.6. The statement ending with 嘛 may explain something which has been stated before it, or what is to be stated after it, i.e., either in the order of 'EFFECT, CAUSE -ma' or 'CAUSE-ma EFFECT.' For instance, as shown in the following (11) and (12) respectively:

(11) 他为什么得锦标呢？ How did he win the championship?

他能贯彻始终嘛。 He has perseverance and commitment.

(12) 他有钱嘛,当然买得起了。 He is wealthy. He certainly can afford it.

C.1. Another function of 嘛 in a statement is that of "dogmatic assertion" (Y.R. Chao), emphatically affirming the accuracy of one's evaluation, predication, or observation.

(13) 甲：“他既没能耐又不热心，对我们公司一无贡献！” A: "He has neither the talent nor the proper attitude. He is useless to our company."

乙：“我说把他辞了嘛！” B: "I said he should have been dismissed."

(14) 甲：“他还不到一个月就辞职不干了！” A: "He has not yet worked a whole month, and yet he resigned!"

乙：“我告诉你他待不久嘛！” B: "I told you that he would not last!"

In most cases, these dogmatic assertions may have the adverb zaojiu (早就), meaning "long ago" or in the past, for instance:

(13)a 乙：“我早就说把他辞了嘛！”

(14)a 乙：“我早就告诉你他待不久嘛！”

C.2. The statement with 嘛 expresses more than just repeating what was stated before. For instance:

(15)a 我说把他辞了。	I suggest firing him. I suggested firing him.
我早就说把他辞了。	I suggested firing him a long time ago.
我早就说把他辞了嘛!	I suggested firing him a long time ago. (What did I say!) (Didn't I?) (You did not agree then! What now?) (It's no surprise to me!) (Now you understand!)

C.3. The topic of the dogmatic assertion 嘛 does not have to be in the first person:

(16) 甲： "老张不干了。"	A: "Lao Zhang quit."
乙： "他一来就提了嘛。"	B: "He said he would not work long when he came."
(17) 甲： "老李被辞了。"	A: "Lao Li is fired from his position."
乙： "你早就知道他要被开革嘛。	B: "You knew all along that he was going to be fired."

D.1. The last function of 嘛 indicates that the statement to which it is suffixed is specially cited as proof of a specific example. This example follows a general statement. In this case 嘛 is used to emphasize that there is no exception to the preceding generality. For instance:

(18) 错误是难免的美国也有嘛。	Mistakes and weaknesses are inevitable. Even the United States is no exception.

(19) 这种事谁都会办，小刘也会嘛。 We all do this kind of work. Xiao Liu can do it too.

(20) 大家都说好，你也说了嘛。 Everybody considers it good. You did too.

(21) 你把价钱定的这么高，谁买的起？你也买不起嘛。 If you set a price this high, no one can afford it. Even you won't be able to afford it.

In the above illustrations, the first part is a statement of generalization while the second part, suffixed with 嘛 is a particular case which is cited to prove the universality of the general statement. The suffix again functions to convey the "dogmatic assertion" of the speaker, and may be reinterpreted as the following:

(18) a ……美国也有，不是吗？ ...Isn't it so?

(19) a ……小刘也会，你知道的！ ...You are aware of that of course.

(20) a ……你也说了，你不会否认吧？ ...You won't deny it will you?

(21) a ……你也买不起，对不对？ ...Am I right?

Thus the whole expression must be restated in a rhetorical structure, "不是--- 吗，" 'isn't it so that...?' if 嘛 is not used.

18(b)……美国不是也有吗？

(19)b……小刘不是也会吗？

(20)b……你不是也说了吗？

(21)b……你不是也买不起吗？

F. In summary, the bound form particle 嘛 is used to express many varied feelings, emotions, reactions, and attitudes of the speaker, among which dogmatic assertion and obvious explanation are only two.

36 The Usage of man N^1 shi N^2 满 N^1 是 N^2

I. **Form:**

man N^1 shi N^2

II. **Examples:**

A.	满地是纸。	There are papers all over the floor.
B.	满屋是书。	There are books filling the room.

III. **Notes:**

A. The form man N^1 shi N^2 is a complete Topic-Comment sentence construction, expressing that some place or some thing (N^1) is filled with something else (N^2), or that something (N^2) is all over someplace or something (N^1).

B.1. In this form, (T-C construction), the topic is man N^1 and the comment is the equative verb phrase shi N^2 identifying man N^1.

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
	NP^1	EV	NP^2
	man N^1	shi	N^2
(II-A)	满地	是	纸
(II-B)	满屋	是	书

B.2. This form may be used in the following ways:

B.2.a. Comment in a Topic-Comment Construction:

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
(1)	他	满脸是汗	[As for him, perspiration is all over his face.] Perspiration is all over his face.

B.2.b. *Complement after V-de*:

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
	NP	VP	
	N/Pron	V *de* Complement	
(2)	他	跑得满脸是汗	[He runs to the extent that perspiration covered his face.] His face is covered with sweat from his running.
(3)	这间屋子	脏得满处是土	[This room is so dirty to the extent that every place is covered with dust!] This room is so dirty that the whole place is covered with dust.

B.3. N^1 and N^2 are restricted to single-syllable words.

• 满书架子是书 NA

• 满屋子是书籍 NA

B.4. Although there are other words which have meanings similar to *man* (满), 'full,' such as *yi* (一) or *quan* ( ) in *yi lian* (一脸) 'the whole face,' *yi jie* (一街) 'the entire street,' *yi shou* (一手) 'whole hand,' *quan guo* (全国) 'entire nation,' etc., they are not used in this structure. *hun* (浑) may replace *man* only in the context of -*shen* as in *hunshen* (浑身).

B.5. When the Ns (N^1 and N^2) are words of more than one syllable, the following forms are used: *man* N^1 *de* N^2:

(II-A)1 满地的碎纸

(II-B)1 满屋子的书

C.1. When the Ns are words of more than one syllable, a modifier-modified structure is used instead, in which *man* N^1 is the modifier, N^2 is the modified, and *de* is the marker of their relationship. Since a noun may be modified by another noun, the marker *de* is often omitted:

	MODIFIER	MODIFIED	
	man N	*de* N	
(4) a	满地	的碎纸	paper all over the floor
(4) b	满地	( )碎纸	

C.2. The modifier-modified structure may be used in the following ways:

a. *Object of a Verb*:

(5) 他弄了满脸的汗。 He worked up a face full of sweat.

b. *Complement after V-de*:

(6) 他弄得满脸的汗 (same)

c. *Topic of a Topic-Comment construction*:

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
(7)	满脸的汗	多不好看	She looks terrible with a face full of sweat.

C.3. The modifier-modified structure is not restricted to single-syllable words:

(8) 满脸臭汗 (smelly sweat)

(9) 满屋子的书 (room)

(10) 满街的汽车 (automobile)

(11) 满地上的碎纸 (floor, little pieces of paper)

C.4. In the modifier-modified structure, the word man 'full' may be replaced by yi and the meaning will remain unchanged. For example:

(4)a 满地的碎纸

(4)b 一地(   )碎纸

(4)c 一̣地(的)碎纸

(5) 满脸(的)汗

(5)a 一̣脸(的)汗

(10) 满街(的)汽车

(10)a 一̣街(的)汽车

37 The Usage of NU SV M N

I. Form:

Nu SV M N

II. Examples:

A. 一大朵红花	a big red flower
B. 一大盒饼干	a big box of cookies

III. Notes:

A.1. Generally, measure words are not modified when used in Nu-M-N context. However, certain measure words may be modified by SVs in the structure Nu-SV-M-N.

A.2. There are two basic types of measure words:

1. those which are used with VP: ci (次), bien (遍), hui (回), etc. pau yici (跑一次) 'run once,' shuo san bien (说三遍) 'repeat three times.'

2. those which are used with NP: zhi (枝), duo (朵), kuai (块), etc. yi zhi bi (一枝笔) 'a pen,' san duo hua (三朵花) 'three flowers.'

Measures for nouns may be further categorized as follows:

a. units for individual items:

duo (朵) for flowers, as in yi duo hua (一朵花) 'a flower.'

zhang (张) for paper, as in san zhang zhi (三张纸) three sheets of paper.'

b. units for collective items of nonspecific quantity:

dui (堆) 'pile,' as in yi dui bao (一堆报) 'a pile of newspapers'

tan (滩) 'pile,'as in yi tan ni (一滩泥) 'a pile of mud.'

c. units which are derived from the names of utensils or containers:

zhuo (桌) derived from zhuozi (桌子) 'table,' as in yi zhuo cai (一桌菜) 'a complete banquet.'

her (盒) derived from hezi (盒子) 'box,' as in san her tang (三盒糖) 'three boxes of candy.'

d. standardized units of weights, length, and size:

bang (磅) 'pound,' dun (吨) 'ton,' liang (两) 'ounce,' etc.

e. units for collective items of specific quantity:

shuang (双) 'pair,' as in si shuang xie (四双鞋) 'four pairs of shoes,' fu (副) 'set,' as in yi fu pai (一副牌) 'a set of cards.'

A.3. Among the five classes of measures for NPs, class (d), standardized units of weights, length, and size may not be modified by a SV. For instance, *yi da chi bu and *yi xiao bang mi are both nonacceptable (NA). Also class (e) measures for collective items of specific quantity may not be modified by SVs. For example: expressions such as *yi da dui erhuan (一大对耳环) or *yi da fu pai (一大副牌) are nonacceptable. Class (a) individual unit terms, (b) collective unit of nonspecific quantity, and (c) measures derived from nouns of utensils or containers may be modified by SVs. Each is modified by a different set of SVs.

B.1. The SVs which occur with (a) type measures in Nu-SV-M-N are da (大), xiao (小), chang (长), duan (短), **kuan** (宽) zhai (窄), which describe size, lengtn, thickness, and width.

(1) 他头上戴了一大朵红花。	She wore a big red flower on her head.
(2) 他就挑了一小朵菊花。	He only selected a small daisy.
(3) 桌子上放着一厚本像册.	There is a thick picture album on the desk.

(4)	他就给我一薄片西瓜。	He only gave me a thin slice of watermelon.
(5)	可惜这个大瓶上有一长条裂痕。	It's a pity that there is a long hairline crack on this big vase.
(6)	门下边加一宽条胶皮。	Attach a wide strip of rubber at the bottom of the door.

B.2. With measures of class (a), the number in Nu-SV-M-N is not restricted to yi (一) 'one,' though generally only single syllable numbers are used:

(7)a	一大朵红绒花	a big red flower
(7)b	两大朵红绒花	two big red flowers
(7)c	三小段书	three small passages (of books)

For numbers larger than ten using two or more syllables such as shi ji (十几) '10 plus,' etc., the following patterns may be used:

	NUMERAL Nu	M	SV	NP
(1)a	十一	朵	大	红花

	NUMERAL M	NP		
		SV	M	N
(1)b	十几个	大	朵	绒花

B.3. When the M in Nu-Sv-M-N is one of class (a), the structure may be converted to Nu-M-SV-de-N:

(8)a 一小朵菊花 ⟷ 一朵小菊花

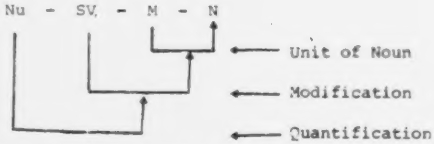
(8)b 一厚本像册 ⟷ 一本厚像册

(8)c 一薄片西瓜 ⟷ 一片薄西瓜

(8)d 一窄条花边 ⟷ 一条窄花边

(8)e 一宽条胶皮 ⟷ 一条宽胶皮

B.4. Note that no matter which SV is used in the pattern, there is no change in the total quantity, but rather a change in size, thickness, or length, of each unit. yi da duo hong hua and yi duo hong hua are the same in terms of the quantity of the noun: a single red flower. liang bo pian xigua and liang pian bo xigua both mean 'two slices of watermelon. Thus the SV refers not to the measure word, but to the M-N construction.



C.1. The numbers which may be used with measure words of class (b) in Nu-SV-M-N are limited to da (大) 'big' and xiao (小) 'small.'

(9)	yi da qun ren	一大群人	a big crowd of people
(10)	yi xiao huor ren	一小伙人	a small band of people
(11)	yi da dui zhi	一大堆纸	a big stack of paper
(12)	yi xiao kun chai	一小捆柴	a small bundle of firewood
(13)	yi da ba tang	一大把糖	a big handful of candy

C.2. The numbers that may be used with measure words of (b) are the single syllable numbers, such as yi (一) 'one' through shi (十) 'ten.' Numbers which are expressed in more than one syllable, such as (11) through (19), or indefinite numbers such as shi-ji (十几) 'ten plus' or hao-ji (好几)'a good many' may not be used with class (b) measure words.

Numbers of more than one syllable are usually expressed in the following pattern:

	Nu	M	NP			
			SV	M	N	
(14)	二十	堆	大	堆	苹果	20 some odd piles of apples
(15)	几百	捆	大	捆	旧书	a few hundred big bundles of used books
(16)	十几	伙	小	伙	游击	10-odd small bands of guerrillas.

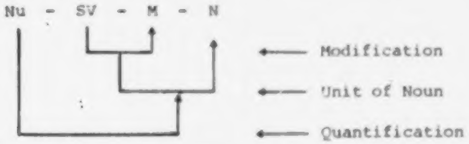
C.3. With (b) measure words, the forms Nu-SV-M-N and Nu-M-SV-N are not mutually convertible.

(12)	一小捆柴	a small bundle of firewood
°	一捆小柴	NA° (a bundle of twigs/kindling)
(9)	一大群人	a large crowd of people
°	一群大人	NA°(a crowd of adults)
(10)	一小伙人	a small band of people
°	一伙小人	NA°(a band of ignoble men)

C.4. The choices of SVs to be used with (b) class measure words are da (大) and xiao (小). The number of measure units is not affected by the choice of one or the other. Instead, the SV affects the size of each unit. For instance:

(17)	大捆书有一百册，小捆书有五十册 所以每一大捆书等于两小捆书。	There are 100 copies of used books in the big bundle, and only 50 copies in the small bundle. Therefore, each big bundle is the equivalent of two small bundles.

Thus, while the number quantifies the measure word, the SV modifies the size of each unit of N as shown below:



D.1. For class (c) measure words, the SVs may refer to size, shape, or capacity, such as man (满) 'round,' ping (平) 'level,' and zheng (整) 'full, entire.' For example:

(18)	一大盒糖	a big box of candy
(19)	一满盒糖	a full box of candy
(20)	一平碗面	a level cup of flour
(21)	一中碗汤	a medium bowl of soup
(22)	一浅碗水	a shallow bowl of water
(23)	一方盒饼干	a square box of crackers

D.2. The numbers which are used with class (c) measure words are limited to those of a single syllable and of small quantity. For instance:

(24)	一大筐果子，四小盒月饼，一共有五件。	With one big basket of fruit, four small boxes of moon-cakes, altogether there are five items.

When a multisyllabic number is required, the following pattern (as diagrammed in (C.2)) is used:

(25)	十几盒大盒蛋糕	over 10 large boxes of cake
(26)	五六盒小盒糖	five or six small boxes of candy

D.3. When the M is a (c) class measure word, the form Nu-SV-M-N may not be converted to Nu-M-SV-N.

(27)	一大桶汽油	a big barrel of gasoline
*	一桶大汽油	NA
(23)	一方盒饼干	a square box of cookies
°	一盒方饼干	NA° (a box of square cookies)

However, since the (c) measure words were originally nouns, the form Nu-SV-M-N may be converted into Nu-SV-M-de-N.

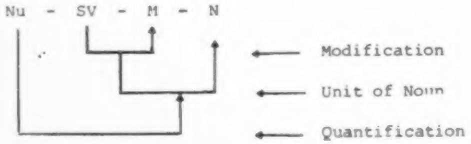
(27) 一大桶汽油

→ 一大桶的汽油

(23) 一方盒饼干

→ 一方盒的饼干

D.4. The underlying structure is similar to that of the class (b) measure words as shown in C.4:



E. In summary, there are different types of measures which are used in this pattern. Their characteristics are:

Classes of M (NP measures)	Underlying structure	Convertible to	SV used
(a) individual unit	Nu-(SV-M-N))	Nu-M-SV-N (Nu-M-SV-*de*-N)	SV of size, length, thickness
(b) collective unit of unspecific quantity	Nu((SV-M)-N)	None	*da* or *xiao*
(c) derived M (from nouns of utensils or containers)	Nu-((SV-M)-N)	Nu-SV-M-*de*-N	SV of size, shape, or capacity, the utensils or containers

38 The Usage of qie VP ne 且 VP 呢

I. Form:

Topic qie VP ne

II. Examples:

A. 他且玩呢。	He is going to enjoy it for a long time.
B. 这辆车且能用些时候呢。	You still can get a lot of use out of this car.
C. 他且弄不完呢，你不用等了。	He is going to take a long time. You don't have to wait for him.
D. 他且不出来呢，你一会儿再来吧！	It will take him quite a long while to come out of there. You can come back again.

III. Notes:

A. The adverb qie (且) used with sentence particle ne (呢) means that the present state of affairs will last a long while before ending. When the VP is affirmative, it means that the action will last for a while. When the VP is negative, it literally means that the lack of action will be prolonged, or more simply, that the action will not take place for quite a while.

(1) 我且吃呢。	It will take awhile for me to finish eating.
(2) 我且不吃呢。	It will take awhile before I am ready to eat.

B.1. qie....ne modifies actions only. Therefore, the only VPs which may be used with this pattern are FVP, as in examples (1) and (2) and CO-VP FVP, as in examples (3) and (4) below.

(3) 我且在这儿作呢。 I will be here working for quite a while.

(4) 我且给他看着呢。 I will be watching over this for him for a while.

It may be in the V-zhe (V- 着) form:

(5) 我们且等着呢。 We will be waiting here for a while.

It may be a negative VP including negative potential resultative VP:

(6) 你且做不完呢。 You will not be able to finish it for a while.

(7) 他且不做呢。 He is not ready to make it for a while yet.

B.2. Adverbs dei (得) and dou (都) may be used with qie VP ne. However, dei must be used only with affirmative VP and should follow qie. For example:

(1)a 我且得吃呢

(3)a 我且得在这儿作呢

(4)a 我且得给他看着呢

(5)a 我们且得等着呢

dou may be used with both affirmative and negative VPs and should precede qie VP ne.

(1)b 我们都且吃呢

(2)b 我们都且不吃呢

B.3. The form qie VP ne, whether affirmative or negative, may be used to describe either habitual or present behavior.

(II-A)a 每次我给他一套'叠构'他且玩呢。

Everytime you give him a set of Lego, he will play with it for a long time.

(II-A)b "他玩什么呢？"

"一套'叠构'。"

"好！他且玩呢。"

"What is he playing with?" "A Lego set." "Fine. He is going to enjoy it for a long time."

(8) 每次给他一个乘法问题他且算不出来呢。

"Everytime I give him a problem of multiplication, he doesn't figure it out for a long time."

C. Compare qie VP and qie....ne:

C.1. The usage of qie VP means 'for the time being,' 'temporarily,' 'for the moment.' That of qie....ne means 'for a long while,' or 'lasting a long time.'

C.2. In qie VP, the VP may not be negative potential form: V-bu-V

* 且吃不完 NA

* 且看不懂 NA

In qie VP ne, the VP may be in the V-bu-V form.

(9) 且吃不完呢。 It will take a long time to finish eating it.

(10) 且看不懂呢。 It will take (him) a long time to understand it.

C.3. A qie VP expression may be an imperative:

(11) 且别说！ [Continue not saying it!] Don't say it yet!

Yet qie VP ne may not be an imperative:

* 且别说呢 NA

C.4. In *qie* VP, the VP may not be a single syllable verb, unless used in a complex sentence as in (11):

* 你且吃 NA

(12) 你且吃我等你。 You eat, I will wait for you.

But *qie*....*ne* may use single syllable verbs:

(1) 我且吃呢。 I am going to use it for a while.

C.6. The form *qie* VP is usually used in written language; *qie* VP *ne* is usually used in spoken form.

D. Comparison of *hai* VP *ne* and *qie* VP *ne*.

D.1. Whether the VP is affirmative or negative, *hai* VP *ne* emphasizes the continuative aspect of the action and *qie* VP *ne* emphasizes the prolonged time span of the action. The former is a statement of the status and the latter is a statement of duration.

(13) 他不能出来见你，他还开会呢。 He can't come out to meet you, he is still in a meeting.

(14) 你不能见他，他还没来呢。 You can't see him, he has not come yet.

(15) 他不能来见你，他还开会呢这个会且开呢。 He can't come out to meet you, he is in a meeting. This is going to last for a while.

(16) 你不能见他，他不在办公室他且不来呢。 You can't see him now, he is not in his office. It is going to be a while before he gets here.

D.2. With *hai* VP *ne*, the VP may not be potential resultative form, while with *qie* VP *ne* it may. The former is used to state the aspect of an individual act, but *qie* VP *ne* may be used to state a general behavior pattern.

(17) 他看书看的仔细，六百页的书他且**看不完**呢。 He reads very carefully. A book of 600 pages will take him quite a while to finish.

* 他还**看不完**呢 NA

D.3. *hai* VP *ne* may be used to describe individual events of the past. *qie* VP *ne* may not be used to describe individual acts or a pattern of behavior in the past.

(18)a 他**还**没看呢。 He has not yet read it.

(18)b 他还**不**看呢。 He is not yet ready to read it.

* 他且**没**看呢 NA

(19) 他且**不**看呢。 It will take him a long time to start reading it.

39 The Usage of V-shang qian lai/ shang qian qu V- 上前来/上前去

I. Forms:

V-shang qian lai

V-shang qian qu

II. Examples:

A. 他看見老赵马上走上前去问好。	The moment he saw old Zhao he immediately went over to say hello.
B.“我们找到出路了！”老王跑上前来报告。	"We found a way out!" reported Lao Wang as he ran towards us.

III. Notes:

A.1. Both shang qian lai and shang qian qu appear to be nothing more than dual-directional compounds (V-V-V) such as pao-shang-lai (跑上来), zou-xia-qu (走下去), etc. However, this form is different from the dual-directional compounds in terms of internal construction as well as syntactical functions.

A.2. In general, both mean a motion in a specific direction. However, the form shang-qian-lai/shang-qian-qu is distinguished from V-V-V compounds by the fact that it is suffixed to another verb, as in:

zou-shang-qian-lai	走上前来	walk forward
gan-shang-qian-lai	赶上前来	quickly move away towards a destination to catch up with someone or something

A.3. In brief, this form basically means to present oneself before a person or to approach an object.

B.1. As stated above, this form is normally suffixed to another verb.

(1) 他走上前来跟老王握手。 — He went forward to shake hands with Lao Wang.

(2) 他慢慢的走上前来说了一声"这！" — He slowly moved forward and said, "Yes, Sir!"

However, it can only be suffixed to locomotion verbs where the actor moves from one point to another, such as pao (跑), 'to run,' zhui (追), 'to chase,' etc. For instance:

(3)a 追上前来/去 — to chase, to catch up

(3)b 挤上前来/去 — to push one's way through

(3)c 送上前来/去 — to deliver, to present

The following verbs which involve no spatial change of the actor cannot take this form as a suffix:

* 想上前来

* 说上前来

* 吃上前来

B.2. This form is used to indicate a motion toward a goal. The goal may be:

a. Explicitly stated in the context:

(4) 老李看見桌子上的东西，便赶上前去翻弄。 — Lao Li saw the articles on the table, and then went over and examined them.

(5) 老李听老太爷咳嗽忙着跑上前去问茶问水。 — Lao Li heard the Old Master's coughs and hurriedly went over to see how he could serve him.

b. Implied:

(2) 他走上前来说了一声："这！"

He came over and said, "Yes, Sir!"

c. A person or an object:

(6) 当清华看到常青被烧死的大树就跑上前去双手抱着大树哭了起来。

When Qinghua saw the tree where Changqing was burnt to death, she ran to the tree, put her arms around it, and cried.

When stated, the goal is always placed before the compound.

* 跑上前来大树 NA

B.3. This form is more frequently used in written than in spoken language. In spoken language, the following forms are preferred:

V-guolai	过来	V over toward (the speaker)
V-guoqu	过去	V away from (the speaker)
V-dao PW lai	到……来	V to PW (close to the speaker)
V-dao PW qu	到……去	V to PW (away from the speaker)
V-dao N de qianbier lai	到……的前边来	V to the front of N
V-dao N de qianbier qu	到……的前边去	V to the front of N (away from the speaker)

For example, the same sentence may be expressed in the following manner:

(II-A) 他看见老赵马上走上前去问好

or 他看见老赵马上走过去问好

or 走到老赵哪问好

or 跑到老赵的前面问好

B.4. The difference between shang-qian-lai and shang-qian-qu, besides the fact that lai and qu indicate two different directions, is that shang-qian-lai must be suffixed to a verb while shang-qian-qu may be used independently.

(7) 你应当上前去给爷爷拜年。 You should go over to Grandpa to wish him a Happy New Year.

* 你上前来告诉我 NA

C. Comparison between shang-qian-lai and dual-directional construction (V-V-V).

C.1. Dual-directional construction is constructed in the following ways: MMV-SDMV-PDMV. Manner motion verb (MMV) is any given motion verb such as dai (戴) 'to wear,' song (送) 'to deliver,' etc. Secondary directional motion verb (SDMV) is any of the following: shang (上), xia (下), jin (进), chu (出), hui (回), guo (过). Primary-directional motion verb is either lai (来) or qu (去).

shang-qian-lai is constructed in the following way: SDMV-PW-PDMV. Basically it is a SDMV-PDMV with a place word (qian) inserted to indicate the direction of the locomotion of the SDMV-PDMV (shang...lai, shang...qu).

C.2. Therefore, the dual-directional compounds may not be further suffixed to a verb. For instance, pao-shang-lai may not be suffixed to another verb such as kai (开) 'to drive,' as in *kaipaoshanglai. But shang-qian-lai may be suffixed to another motion manner verb as in zou-shang-qian-lai, etc. (See III-A-2 above).

C.3. For other recognized dual-directional compounds with shang (上) as the SDMV, there may be counterparts with xia (下), i.e., compounds of the same construction where shang becomes xia. For example:

一上来： 一下来 as 跑上来：跑下来

一上去： 一下去 as 跑上去：跑下去

shang-qian-lai or *shang-qian-qu* on the other hand do not have such counterparts.

上前来：* 下前来

上前去：* 下前去

Some dual-directional compounds may be used in split form and may have a PW--a noun denoting a place--inserted. Examples: 拿下山来，开进城去

shang-qian-lai or *shang-qian-qu* may not be used in split form and no other PW may be inserted.

C.5. The first verb in a dual-directional compound may be a transitive or intransitive motion-manner verb, such as *banshanglai* (搬上来) and *paoshanglai* (跑上来). But the MMV which may take *shang-qian-lai* as suffix must be intransitive, such as *ji* (挤), *zou* (走), *cou* (凑), *gan* (赶), *zhui* (追), *pu* (扑), *tiao* (跳), etc.

C.6. The dual-directional compounds may be used independently or in a construction with another VP:

(8) 他跑上来了。 He ran up there.

(9) 他跑上来看你。 He ran up there to see you.

(10) 他跑上来没看见一个人影子。 He ran up there yet did not see a thing.

The *shang-qian-lai* form is always followed by another VP. Only *shang-qian-qu* may be used independently.

• 上前来问好 NA

(11) 上前去问好． He went over to say hello.

shang-qian-lai must be used as a suffix to another action verb.

(12) 跑上前来问好． He ran forward to say hello.

40 The Usage of *shi bu shi* 是不是

I. Forms:

A. /S/, *shi bu shi*?

B. *Shi bu shi* /S/?

C. Topic *shi bu shi* Comment (VP)?

II. Examples:

A.	他不想来是不是？	He does not want to come (is it so?) does he?
B.	是不是他不想来？	Is it that he does not want to come?
C.	他是不是不想来？	Is it that he does not want to come?

III. Notes:

A.1. Generally speaking, *shi bu shi* (是不是) is a Question Phrase constructed using the affirmative-negative version of verb *shi*. It is also used in a fashion similar to other QPhs. For instance:

(1)	你去，好不好！	You go, all right?
(2)	你给他，行不行？	Give it to him, O.K.?
(3)	你喜欢他，对不对？	You like him, is that correct?
(4)	他是中国人，是不是？	He is a Chinese, isn't he?

Of these 4 Qphs, the use of *hao bu hao* (好不好) and *xing bu xing* (行不行) is more limited, while *duei bu duei* (对不对) and *shi bu shi* may be used more freely in a number of different constructions. For example:

Functive VP

(1) 你去，好不好？
行不行？
对不对？
是不是？

(2) 你给他好不好？
行不行？
对不对？
是不是？

Aux VP

(3) 他喜欢唱歌， 对不对？
是不是？
* 好不好？
* 行不行？

EVP

(4) 他是中国人， 是不是？
对不对？
* 好不好？
* 行不行？

In general, *hao bu hao* and *xing bu xing* are QPhs requesting an opinion, agreement, or approval, whereas *duei bu duei* and *shi bu shi* request verification of a fact.

A.2. *shi bu shi* is the only one of these four which may occur as an affirmative-negative alternative question after a main verb, before a sentence, or before a VP.

B.1. Form A, when *shi bu shi* occurs after a /S/, has the following two functions:

(5) 他是中国人是不是？ He *is* a Chinese, isn't he?

(6) 他要钱，是不是？ He wants money, isn't it so?

In (5) *shi bu shi* refers back to the main verb or the preceding sentence which is a Topic-Identification construction, and is an affirmative-negative question construction. In (6), *shi bu shi* relates to *shi* as a main verb, requesting a verification of the whole statement, *ta yau qian* (他要钱) and is a QPh.

B.2. Form A has the following restrictions when *shi bu shi* functions as an affirmative-negative question:

(a) The sentence must always be affirmative:

(7) 这个是你的，是不是？ This is yours, isn't it?

* 这个不是你的，是不是？ NA

(b) In the case where the sentence contains a 'neg-shi,' the question must be posed in the following manner:

(8) 这个不是你的，对吗/对不对？ This isn't yours, right?

(c) However, when *shi bu shi* functions as a QPh (6), the preceding sentence may be either affirmative or negative.

(9) 他要走，是不是？ He wants to leave, isn't that so?

(10) 他不愿意走，是不是？ He is unwilling to go, isn't that so?

C.1. The following cases may occur in Form B, where shi bu shi appears before a /S/:

(11) 是不是我买的? Is it not the one I bought?

(12) 是不是他做? Isn't it that he will do it?

In (11) wo mai de is a NP. The whole expression is "(NP^1) shi bu shi NP^2" with NP^1 omitted. Thus shi bu shi is used in a T-C construction and it functions as an affirmative-negative version of the main verb.

In (12) ta zuo itself is a Topic-Comment sentence construction. The whole expression is in the following form: "shi bu shi /S/" and is a Topicless construction 无主句 wu chu ju. Since it is followed by a /S/ the whole expression "shi bu shi /S/" is abbreviated from "shi bu shi /S/ de qingxing," thus the whole expression means "[Is it or is it not the fact that he will do it?] Isn't it that he will do it?"

In short, in Form B, shi bu shi may be used as either a Topic-Comment construction with topic omitted and with the aff-neg version of the main verb as in (11), or as a Topicless construction followed by a complete sentence as in (12).

C.2. In the function illustrated in (11), shi bu shi is followed by a NP, ranging from a simple noun to a long, modified NP. In the function illustrated in (12), shi bu shi is followed by a complete sentence construction, ranging from a simple sentence to a longer and more complex sentence.

D.1. When shi bu shi is used between a topic and a comment as in Form C, the case may be the following:

(13) 你是不是吃面？ You eat noodles, don't you?

(14) 你是不是很着急？ You are worried, aren't you?

In both cases, the comment is always a VP: in (13), it is a FVP and in (14), it is a SVP. Since shi bu shi occurs between the topic and comment, its function is that of a request for confirmation and referring solely to the comment.

D.2. If the VP is one which has CO-VP(s), shi bu shi may not occur immediately preceding the main VP:

(15) a 你从美国坐船经日本到中国来？ Are you coming to China by boat by way of Japan?

b 你是不是从美国坐船经日本到中国来？ Are you coming to China by boat via Japan from the U.S.A.?

c 你从美国是不是坐船经日本到中国来 Are you coming to China via Japan by boat?

d 你从美国坐船是不是经日本到中国来 Are you coming to China from the U.S.A. by boat via Japan?

e 你从美国坐船经日本是不是到中国来？ Are you coming to China ----- ?

* 你从美国坐船经日本到中国是不是来？

D.3. The FVP may either be affirmative or negative:

(16) a 你是不是想给他钱？ Are you or are you not planning to give him money?

(16)b 你是不是不想给他钱? [Are you or are you not planning not to give him money?] Is it true that you don't intend to pay him?

The FVP may be in the completion aspect.

(17)a 你是不是给他钱了? Is it true that you gave him money?

(17)b 你是不是没给他钱? Is it true that you did not give him money?

D.4. SVP following shi bu shi may also be either affirmative or negative.

(18)a 他是不是聪明? aff.

(18)b 他是不是不方便? neg.

(18)c 他是不是笨? aff.

(18)d 他是不是不笨? neg.

D.5. When shi bu shi is followed by an affirmative FVP, the shi bu shi may be used in its split form:

(19)a 你是想给他钱不是?

(19)b 你是从美国来不是?

When shi bu shi is followed by a SVP, the shi bu shi may not be used in its split form:

* 你是笨不是? NA

* 你是不笨不是? NA

E.1. There are three different possible patterns of shi bu shi in any given NP-FVP or NP-SVP sentence:

a. *shi bu shi* NP^1-FVP/SVP

b. NP^1 *shi bu shi* FVP/SVP

c. NP^1 FVP/SVP *shi bu shi*

(a) and (c) are interchangeable in usage and in meaning, while (b) is different because in (b) *shi bu shi* refers solely to the FVP while in (a) and (c) it refers to the entire NP FVP/SVP.

E.2. In any EV sentence there are three possible positions of *shi bu shi*:

a. NP^1 EV NP^2 *shi bu shi*

b. NP^1 *shi bu shi* EV NP^2

c. *shi bu shi* NP^1 EV NP^2

The EV in (a) must be affirmative; in (c) it may be either affirmative or negative. In (b), if the EV is *shi*, it becomes redundant and is omitted.

他叫老王	他是不是叫老王?
他姓王	他是不是姓王?
他是学生	他是不是学生?

Again, *shi bu shi* in (a) and (c) refers to the entire NP^1 EV NP^2 but in (c) it refers only to the NP^2.

41 The Usage of wo shuo VP/S 我说 VP/S

I. Form:

A. wo shuo S.

B. wo shuo Q?

C. wo shuo Q!

II. Examples:

A.1. 我说他不来。 I think he is not coming.

A.2. 我说他不来了。 I told you he is not coming.

A.3. 我说这个好。 I would say this is good.

B.1. 我说这个怎么吃法？ How can we eat this?

B.2. 我说你可以快一点吗？ Would you be able to hurry up?

C.1. 我说你疯啦！ Are you crazy or something!

C.2. 我说这怎么吃呀！ How could we have this!

C.3. 我说你快点成不成！ Won't you hurry up!

III. Notes:

A. Wo shuo (我说) has the following three usages: (a) followed by a statement, it means 'in my opinion' or 'as I see it'; (b) followed by a question, it is an attention-getting phrase for the question that follows, such as "I say, (who likes to go?); and (c) followed by a question, it converts the question into a rhetorical comment, a statement of persuasion, or a plea.

B.1. Form A is based on the following structure:

TOPIC	COMMENT	
Subject	Verb	Object
我	说	S (T-C)
I	say pronounce am of the opinion that	Statement

The statement following wo shuo may be affirmative or negative.

(1)a 我说这个贵。	I think this is expensive.
(1)b 我说这个不贵。	I think this is not expensive.

Since Form A means 'in my opinion,' wo shuo does not normally need any aspect marker. However, two particular cases must be noted. When particular emphasis is to be placed on the fact that "I did say..." or "I was of the opinion of...," the form wo shuoguo... or wo shuoguo le... is used.

B.2. Furthermore, when aspect marker le is used at the end of the whole sentence there are two possible interpretations.

(a) The aspect marker is part of the statement that serves as the object of wo shuo:

(4)a 我说这个贵了。	I think this has become expensive.

The underlying structure of (4)a is as follows:

	TOPIC	COMMENT			
	V	Verb	Object		
			Topic	Comment	Aspect
(4)a	wo	shuo	zhei ge	gui	le

(b) The aspect marker is part of the verb shuo which serves to emphasize the completion of the action (see B.1. above) of shuo.

(4)b 我说这个贵了。 I did say that this was expensive.

The underlying structure for (4)b is:

	TOPIC	COMMENT			
		Verb Phrase			Aspect
		Verb	Object		
			T	C	
(4)b	wo	shuo	zheige	gui	le

B.3. In Form A, the subject may be second or third person:

(5)a 我说………	In my opinion
(5)b 你说………	In your opinion
(5)c 他说………	In his/her opinion

etc.

B.4. The form wo shuo is never negated *wo bu shuo ta lai (我不说他来) but instead the following statement is negated. For example: wo shuo ta bu lai.

C.1. Form B may be a replacement of wo wen ni or wo wen nimen.

(6)a 我问你这个多少钱?	Let me ask you, how much is this?
(6)b 我说这个多少钱?	Listen, how must is this?
(7)a 我问你们他来吗?	Let me ask you, is he coming?
(7)b 我说他来吗?	Listen, is he coming?

Form B is a phrase used to attract the listener's attention and may be translated as 'listen!' or 'say!'

C.2. Form B is always wo shuo and does not have second or third person counterparts. Furthermore, the listener, the person whose attention is being drawn, must be second person singular or plural. Thus, none of the following may be replaced by wo shuo:

(8)a 我们问你这个多少钱？	We would like to ask you how much this costs.
(8)b 他问你这个多少钱？	He asks you how must this costs.
(8)c 我问他这个多少钱？	I ask him how much this costs.

D.1. When a question construction is preceded by wo shuo, it often becomes a rhetorical question.

(9) 我说你要干什么？	What do you think you are doing?

Although 你要干什么 is the question, "What do you plan to do?", when preceded by wo shuo the whole structure expresses the speaker's negative attitude and disparaging comment on whatever is planned. Thus it may be translated as "What on earth are you doing?" or "What do you think you are doing?" and is not to be answered.

D.2. The questions may be in any of the following forms: Question Word question as in (9), Affirmative-negative question as in (10), or Question Particle question as in (11):

(10) 我说你用心念书好不好？	Won't you please study hard!
(11) 我说你糊涂啦？	Are you becoming muddle-headed or something?

D.3. In Form C, the pronoun wo in wo shuo may not be replaced by any other pronoun.

o 他说你用心念书行不行？ NA

o 你说他糊涂啦？ NA

D.4. All questions may be followed by question particles such as a (啊), wa (哇), la (啦), na (呐), ya (呀), etc.

(9)a 我说你要干什么呀？

(10)a 我说你用心念书好不好哇？

(11)a 我说你糊涂啦？

E. The distinction between Form B and Form C lies in the intonation: pause, pitch level, tempo, terminal contour.

E.1. Form B has a prolonged pause between wo shuo and the question. Form C does not have a pause between wo shuo and the question.

E.2. Form B is used with a dropping tone of voice at the end of wo shuo. Form C is not used with a dropping tone of voice at the end of wo shuo.

E.3. Form B has a slow tempo. Form C has a deliberately slow tempo only for particular emphasis or dramatization. Otherwise it has a quick tempo.

E.4. Form B may be replaced by wo wen ni. Form C may be replaced by nan dau....

(12)a 我说你疯啦！ Are you crazy or something?

(12)b 难道你疯了吗！ Could it be that you have gone crazy?

42 The Usage of VP^1 ye bai VP^1 VP^1 也白 VP^1

I. Form:

VP^1 ye bai VP^2

II. Examples:

A.	说也白说。	It is useless to explain.
B.	生气也白生气。	It is useless to get angry.
C.	拿出来也白拿出来。	It is useless to take it out.
D.	不说也白不说。	It is not going to be useful not to talk.
E.	不参加也白不参加。	It is not helpful not to participate. It is useless to refuse to participate.
F.	不捐出来也白不捐出来。	Not taking it out is not going to be helpful. It is useless to refuse to take it out.

III. Notes:

A.1. This structure is derived from a longer structure 'zongshi...ye bai....' which means 'even....is useless.' However, the structure in question, VP^1 ye bai VP^1 is even more restricted in application and more emphatic than the structure from which it is derived. This pattern indicates that although a certain action (VP) may take place or has taken place, the satisfaction or expected achievement is negligible.

A.2. The basic structure is VP^1 ye bai VP^1. The VP before ye indicates that either an affirmative or a negative action will result in bai VP (白 VP): 'fruitless, without result, or in vain.'

Here the adverb bai (白), 'in vain,' must be distinguished from bai (白), 'free,''without charge,' or 'without compensation or reward.'

The comparison of the two usages of bai (白) will be taken up in section III-D. The following discussion will concentrate on the structure as presented in Section I and II above.

B.1. The VPs occurring before and after ye and bai must be identical.

(1) 看也白看。 It is useless to read.

(2) 买也白买。 It is useless to buy it.

* 看也白买 NA

B.2. The VP can be any of the following:

Affirmative (II-1, 2, and 3), negative (II-4, 5, and 6), single syllable (II-1), multisyllable (II-2 and 3), single verb (II-1), or complex verb (II-2 and 3).

B.3. The particle le (了) may be used in this structure in the following manners:

a. Indicating a change of status:

(3) 书馆的书早就买完了，你现在去也白去了。 The books in the store have long been sold out so it is useless for you to go now.

(4) 他已经人事不知，你说也白说了。 He has already lost consciousness; it is useless for you to go to explain now.

The le at the end of this structure indicates that the situation has undergone a change, and that the action will no longer yield any result.

b. Indicating completion of action:

(5) 这本书还没有出版，他到书铺去了也白去。 This book has not been published yet, so even if he went to the bookstore, it would be useless. (He will come back empty-handed).

(6) 这件事根本不归我管，他给我们的呈文交了也白交。 This matter is not, and never has been, under our jurisdiction; if he submitted the proposal it would be in vain. (We are not authorized to act on it)

The le indicates that if the actions were to take place, the consequence would have been fruitless nevertheless.

c. Indicating both completion of action and change in situation:

(7) 你这笔钱花也白花了。 You spent this sum of money in vain.

(8) 你这笔钱花了也白花了。 (same)

In (7), the sentence-ending le has a combined function of indicating a completion of action and a change of status. In (8), there is one le for each of these two functions.

Note that the change of status le in (3), (4) and (7) implies some degree of regretfulness.

B.4. The particle zhe (着) may occur in this structure and since it is part of verb form, it is used before and after ye bai.

(9) 你等着也白等着，他已经决定不来了。 You are waiting in vain; he has already decided to come.

(10) 这些东西已经卖给别人了，你看着也白看着，不如回家吧！ These things have already been sold (to someone else); it is useless for you to keep watching them. It would be better for you to go home.

B.5. VP^1 ye bai VP^1 may be expressed in the following alternate ways:

a. VP^1 ye mei yong (VP 也没用)

b. VP ye bu shengxiao (VP 也不生效)

c. VP ye bu hui you jieguo (VP 也不会有结果)

d. VP *dui* Topic *meishemma* *bauqu* (VP 对 Topic 没什么帮助)

However, VP^1 *ye* *bai* VP^1 is more compact and is therefore more emphatic than the others.

B.6. When the VP is a single syllable word, *ye* (也) must be used. However, when the VP is a multisyllabic word, *ye* may be omitted.

(11)a	吃也白吃。	It is useless to eat it.
*	吃( )白吃。	NA
(12)a	预备也白预备。	It is useless to prepare for it.
(12)b	预备( )白预备。	" "
(13)a	不吃也白不吃。	It is useless not to eat it.
(13)b	不吃( )白不吃。	" "

B.7. The VP^1 *ye* *bai* VP^1 itself may be used as a comment:

(14)	你不要白不要。	It is useless for you not to accept it.
(15)	这笔钱存也白存	It is useless to put this sum of money into the savings account.
(16)	这件事他不会管，你提也白提。	He won't pay attention to this. It is useless for you to propose it to him.

Furthermore, it may be used as Component I of a compound sentence:

(17)	你不要也白不要，还是要吧!	It is useless for you not to accept it; you had better take it.
(18)	这笔钱存也白存 ，不如现在就用。	It is useless to put this sum of money into the savings account; it is better that you make use of it now.
(19)	这件事他不会管，你提也白提，要提你就自找麻烦了。	He won't pay attention to this. It is useless for you to propose it to him; if you do you will only get yourself in trouble.

C. compare VP^1 ye bai VP^1 to zongshi VP^1 ye VP^2

C.1. In VP^1 ye bai VP^1, the two VPs are identical. In zongshi VP^1 ye VP^2, the two VPs are not necessarily the same.

(20)	纵使看也不懂.	Even if you read it, you will not understand it.
(21)	看也白看	It is useless to read it.

C.2. In VP^1 ye bai VP^1, both VPs share a single topic. In zongshi VP^1 ye VP^2, the VPs may either share one single topic or each may have its own.

(22)	你来也白来	It is useless for you to come.
(23)	纵使你来他也不来	Even if you come, he will not come.

C.3. In VP^1 ye bai VP^1, the first VP is the topic and ye bai VP is its comment, as shown in the diagram below for sentences (22) and (24). In zongshi VP^1 ye VP^2, the two VPs may be connected in parallel constructions; by zongshi....ye.... as shown in the diagram for (25) below.

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
		Topic	Comment
(22)	你	来	也白来
(24)	你	不去	也白不去

	TOPIC^1 COMMENT^1	TOPIC^2 COMMENT^2
	zongshi........	....ye......
(25)	纵使你来	他也不来

C.4. Only when the topics of VPs are one and the same are these two structures (zongshi....ye.... and VP^1 ye bai VP^1) interchangeable.

(22) 你来也白来 ⟷ 纵使你来也白来

(24) 你不去也白不去 ⟷ 纵使你不去也白不去

D. Comparison between (1) bai VP meaning 'in vain' and (2) bai VP meaning 'free of charge.'

The comparison is presented by comparing two usages of bai VP in their minimal context and in gradually enlarged contexts.

D.1. In the minimal context, these two meanings of bai VP are indistinguishable.

(26) 他白吃

(1) He eats in vain.
(What he eats will not be beneficial to him.)

(2) He eats for free.
(He does not have to pay for what he eats.)

D.2. When bai VP serves as a comment in a Topic-Comment construction, it may mean either 'free' or 'in vain.'

(27) 我白看 free and in vain

(28) 书白看 free and in vain

In example (27), the NP (topic) is the subject of bai VP, and in example (28) the NP (topic) is the object of bai VP. Thus, we may state that when bai VP is preceded by a NP, the two meanings are indistinguishable.

D.3. With negation mark bu (不), there are the following possibilities:

(29) 他不白吃 free and in vain

(30) 他白不吃 in vain

Example (29) may mean either, 'He does not eat in vain' or, 'He does not eat for free.' Example (30) can only mean, 'His refusing to eat will not do him any good.'

D.4. When bai VP serves as the comment to a VP topic, or when bai VP is preceded by a VP, the following may occur:

(31) 去白去 喝白喝 in vain and free

(32) 不去白不去 in vain

* 去白不去 NA

* 不去白去 NA

* 去白来 NA

* 去白不来 NA

* 不去白不来 NA

Among these possible occurrences of VP bai VP, only (31) and (32) are acceptable. (31) needs to be used with another similar structure to become a sentence.

(33) 去白去！他已经走了，别人都帮不了你忙！ It is useless to go, and he left already. No one else can help you.

(34) 喝白喝，可是吃得给钱。 Drinks and beverages are free. Food is not.

Thus, in VP bai VP, the two meanings of bai VP are not distinguishable.

D.5. When bai VP is preceded by ye (也), bai VP can only mean 'in vain.' for example:

(35) 去也白去 in vain

(36) 不去也白不去 in vain

D.6. When bai VP is followed by further comment or explanatory remarks, the meaning of bai VP is usually derived from those remarks.

(37) 他白去，对这件事没有什么益处。 It is useless for him to go. It (this trip) is not going to help this situation.

(38) 他白看，没人要他付钱。 It is free for him. No one asked him for money.

D.7. In summary: Among all the contextual environments in which bai VP occurs, there are three cases where the meaning of bai VP is clearly 'in vain.' These are bai bu VP, VP^1 ye bai VP^1, and bu VP^1 bai bu VP^1, as shown in the following:

	CONTEXTUAL ENVIRONMENT	MEANING	
		in vain	free
a.	bai VP	V	V
b.	bu bai VP	V	V
c.	bai bu VP	V	
d.	NP bai VP	V	V
e.	VP bai VP	V	V
f.	VP ye bai VP	V	
g.	bu VP ye bai bu VP	V	
h.	bai VP, Comments	V	V

The structure in illustration (g) is a negative version of (f). Therefore, though the meaning of bai VP is often fused, there are still structural means to distinguish them.

43 The Usage of yi M^1 M^1 — M^1 M^1

I. Form:

yi M M

II. Examples:

A. 这些人一个个都是又聪明又能干。	These people, each and every one of them, are smart and capable.
B. 他们一个个都跑了。	They all ran away.

III. Notes:

A. Generally, the form yi M M is used to mean each and every one of a large group or class.

B. The form yi M M may be used in apposition with a noun, either animate or inanimate.

(1) 这些孩子一个个都跑了。	Every one of these children ran away.
(2) 这些家具一件件都很貴。	Each and every piece of these articles of furniture is expensive.
(3) 这些牛一头头都很肥。	Each and every one of these cows is fat.

However, if the NP-topic is understood from the context, the form yi M M may be used as a topic.

(1)a 一个个都跑了

(2)a 一件件都很貴

(3)a 一头头都很肥

B.2. Whether used by itself or in apposition to a NP, the form yi M M must be used in the topic position of a sentence construction.

(4)这些衣裳一件件都很好看。	All of these clothes are pretty. (Topic, NP yi M M)
(5)这些衣裳一件件我都喜欢。	I like all of these clothes. (Object, NP yi M M)
* 这些衣裳我喜欢一件件	NA
* 我喜欢一件件这些衣裳	NA

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
	NP	Topic	Comment
	Object	Subject	Verb
(5)	这些衣裳 一件件	我	都喜欢

B.3. Note that the adverb dou (都) or doushi (都是) may be used with yi M M as in the illustrations.

C. Compare yi M M with yi M yi M.

C.1. In yi M M the number is always yi.

In yi M yi M the number may be any numeral, that is, the form is Nu M Nu M.

(5) 一件件我都喜欢	
* 两件件我都喜欢	NA
(6)他们一个一个的出去了。	They went out one by one.
(7)他们两个两个的出去了。	They went out two by two.

C.2. The form yi M M does not imply time or sequential occurrence of every M or N. The form yi M yi (or Nu M Nu M) implies a sequential occurence.

(8) 这些衣裳不要一块儿洗一件一件的洗。 Wash these clothes one by one. Not all together!

(9) 虽然我们就有两个录音机，如果他们两个两个的进来，每个人就都有机会听到录音了。 Although we have only two tape recorders, if they come in two by two, everyone will have a chance to listen to the tapes.

C.3. The form yi M M always refers to 'each and every M of a group,' and therefore is used as noun substitute or in apposition to a noun. The form yi M yi M may be used to refer to 'each and every M of a group,' or the manner in which an action should be carried out. Therefore, it is used either in apposition to a NP, as a noun substitute, or as an adverbial phrase.

(10) 这些画 {一张张都 / 一张一张都} 精美。 Each and every one of these paintings is excellent.

(11) 这些画我不一起卖，我得一张一张的卖。 I will sell these paintings one by one, not in one lot.

C.4. When the M is a measure for an action or a verb, yi M M may be used as an adverb and means to perform an action repeatedly (12). Only when the numeral is yi in Nu M Nu M does this pattern mean to perform an action repeatedly (13):

(12) 我一次次的说。 I repeatedly mentioned it.

(13) 我一次一次的说他不听。 I said it again and again, but he wouldn't listen.

(14) 这些钱我不一起给他；我一次一次的给他。 I will not give him the money all at once; I will give it to him in scheduled payments.

D. Compare yi M M with mei (每).

D.1. Again, yi M M can only have the numeral yi preceding it, while mei may have other numbers following it.

(15)a 每位 every person

(15)b 每两本 every two books

(15)c 每三四个星期 every three or four weeks

D.2. The usage of yi M M may not be followed by a comments which indicate apportionment. On the other hand, mei Nu may be used with comments which indicate apportionment.

* 他们一个个都买一本

(16) 他们每个人都买了一本。 Each of them bought a copy.

(17) 他们每两年来一次。 They come every two years.

(18) 这个音乐家每三年收一两个门徒。 This master musician accepts one or two students every three years.

D.3. yi M M is more dramatic than mei Nu.

(18)a 他们一个个又聪明又能干。 Each and every one of them is both smart and capable.

(18)b 他们每个人又聪明又能干。 Every one of them is both smart and capable.

D.4. yi M M must refer to the NP. mei Nu may refer to a preceding NP as in (19), (20), (21), or to a following VP as in (22), (23):

(19) 这些书一本本都好。 All of these books are excellent.

(20) 这些人一个个/一位位都高。 All of these people are tall.

(21) 这些书每本都好。	All of these books are excellent.
(22) 这些书每一星期涨价一次。	The prices of these books go up every week.
(23) 他们每年来一次。	They come once every year.

44 The Usage of yi N V　　一 N V

I. Form:

yi Noun Verb

II. Examples:

A.	一头撞去	to dash headlong towards
B.	一脚跨进门	quickly gets his foot in the threshhold
C.	一口道破	disclosed its mystery with a single word

III. Notes:

A. This pattern gives a dramatic description of a swift, easy, and accurate action.

B.1. Although this pattern appears to be a "Nu-M-V," in reality it is not. The numeral yi (一) is an adverb (see section B.5 below). The element following yi is an instrumental noun, by which the action is carried out.

B.2. The following are a few examples of instrumental nouns used in this form.

a. Parts of the body:

(1)a	一头撞去	dash headlong toward
(1)b	一头撞倒	knocked over with one's head
(2)a	一把抓来	grasp in one hand (one grab)
(2)b	一把抓住	snatch away in one swipe
(3)a	一口咬下来	tear off with one bite

(3)b	一口咬住	sink his teeth into with one bite
(4)a	一巴掌打来	to slap with one hand
(4)b	一巴掌打倒	knocked him down with one slap

Other parts of the body such as tui (腿) 'leg,' shou (手) 'hand,' jiao (脚) 'foot,' quan (拳) 'fist,' etc., may also be used as the instrumental noun.

b. Other instruments:

(5)a	一刀砍去	shave it with one swing of the sword
(5)b	一刀砍倒	knock it off with one swing of the sword
(6)a	一笔划去	Xed it with one stroke of the pen
(6)b	一笔钩销	eliminated it with one stroke of the pen
(7)a	一箭射去	shot it with one shot
(7)b	一箭射中	hit the bull's eye with one quick shot

Others such as qiu (球) 'ball,' bang (棒) 'club,' jian (剪) 'scissors,' zhen (針) 'needle,' etc. may also be used.

B.3. The VP is always a compound action verb which may be a directional verb compound, as shown in the first example of each pair (a), or a resultative compound, as shown in the second example of each pair (b). The sentences with directional compounds indicate a swift, sudden action. They are often followed by expressions such as "did not have time to turn around," "so swift that it was not possible to take defensive measures," or "it is swifter than words," etc.

(8) 老张一脚踢去，老王闪躲不及，竟被踢倒。 Lao Zhang suddenly swung his foot, and Lao Wang, having no time to get out of the way, was knocked down.

Those with resultative compounds emphasize the speed and ease in achieving results.

(9) 老张来一个飞腿，一脚踢倒了老王。 Lao Zhang gave a "flying leg" movement and knocked Lao Wang on the ground with one kick.

B.4. Sentences with directional compounds may be used with a CO-VP indicating the direction or the target:

(8)a 老张一脚向老王踢去，老王……… Lao Zhang gave a kick towards Lao Wang ---- .

xiang (向), chong (冲), chao (朝), or wang (往) may all be used in the CO-VP. Sentences with resultative compounds may be used with Ba construction or Bei construction as shown in the following examples:

(9)a 老张来一个飞腿，把老王一脚踢倒。 (same as illustration (9))

(9)b 老张来一个飞腿，老王被他一脚踢倒。 Lao Zhang gave a "flying leg" kick and Lao Wang was knocked on the ground.

B.5. Whether the instrument noun is a part of the body or an implement (such as knife, club, etc.), and whether the VP is a DV or a RV, this form is derived from 'NP^1 yixiazi yong NP^2 VP': NP^1 is the actor, NP^2 is the instrument, and the VP may be a DV or a RV, and yixiazi (一下子) indicates the swift manner of the VP.

TOPIC	COMMENT		
NP	Adverbial Phrase	CO-VP	Main VP
NP	yixiazi	yong-NP	DV/RV
NP	yi(xiazi)	(yong)NP	DV/RV
老张	一(下子)	(用)刀	砍来/砍倒
老张	一	刀	砍来/砍倒

Therefore, contrary to appearances, it is clear that yi is not a numeral in this construction. It is an adverb and means "suddenly," "swiftly," or "at once." Furthermore, there is no functional relationship between yi and the following instrumental noun.

The element following yi is an instrumental noun and is the object of yong in CO-VP yong-NP. It has no actual function as a measure as it appears on the surface.

B.6. In translation, adverbs or adverbial phrases must be added to the translation even if they have no direct reference to the original Chinese structure, in order to express smoothly the full meaning of the given phrase.

45 The Usage of yi V NU M 一 V NU M

I. Form:

yi Verb Nu M

II. Examples:

A. 一跑千里	[one run 1,000 li] One trip covers 1,000 miles One gallop covers 1,000 miles
B. 一打一宵	One game lasts one night (Mah-Jongg)

III. Notes:

A. yi Verb Nu M implies the swiftness, ease, or intensity of an action. Such swiftness, ease, or intensity is described in terms of the result of the action, identified by Nu M. It is used as a powerful, dramatic comment on the topic.

(1) 这匹马能一跑千里。	This horse can run 1,000 li in one trip.
(2) 他们爱打牌一打一宵。	They really love playing cards; once they start, they play straight through the night.

B.1. In this pattern, the word yi (一) in yi Verb is an adverb, which means 'every' action, a 'single' action, or 'swift' action. The Nu M is the quantitative statement of the result of the Verb. It may therefore be in terms of time or NP quantity.

(3) 一别十年。	One separation lasted 10 years.
(4) 一去千里。	One departure sent him thousands of miles away.

B.2. The underlying structure of this pattern is: Modification - Verb - Quantification, as illustrated in the following diagram:

VP

Modification	Verb	Quantification
Adverb	Verb	Nu - M - (N)
一	别	十年
一	去	千里(路)

B.3. Whether the structure involves a modified and quantified verb or modified verb with quantified object, it is an abbreviation of the full structure yi Verb jiu Verb Nu M (O).

(5) 一跑(就跑)千里(路) ⟶ 一跑千里

(6) 一下(就下)三天 ⟶ 一下三天

The full structure may also be used to express past and future events by using adverbs such as keyi (可以), huei (会), etc. and completion aspect marker le (了). For instance:

(5)a 一跑(就可以跑)千里(路) ⟶ 一跑千里

(5)b 一跑(就跑了)千里(路) ⟶ 一跑千里

(6)a 一下(就会下)三天 ⟶ 一下三天

(6)b 一下(就下了)三天 ⟶ 一下三天

Therefore, yi V Nu M may either be in the past, present, or future tense.

B.4. Many formulaic expressions were coined a long time ago based on this structure. In addition to those used in the above illustrations, some popular ones are:

(7) 一目十行	[one eyeing covers 10 lines] a single reading covers 10 lines

(8) 一泻千里	[one downpour covers 1,000 li] cascading down thousands of li
(9) 一掷百万	[one throw covers hundreds of thousands] a single expenditure will involve tens of thousands of dollars

This is not to imply that only formulaic expressions are used in this pattern. New expressions may be constructed to fit the needs of the moment. For example:

(10)a 一打一夜	one game lasts the whole night through
(10)b 一打八圈	one game lasts eight rounds
(11)a 一画五小时	one sitting lasts five hours
(11)b 一画五张	one painting session produces five pictures

B.5. In the form yi Verb Nu M, the verb is a single syllable word. In the full structure yi Verb jiu Verb Nu M, the verb may be more than one syllable. For instance:

(3)	Full Form:	一别离(就别离了)十年
	Abbreviated Form:	一别十年
(4)	Full Form:	一扔/花费(就扔/花费)百万块钱
	Abbreviated Form:	一掷百万

46 The Usage of VP yong/shi de N VP 用/使的 N

I. Form:

VP yong/shi de N

II. Examples:

1. 炒菜用/使的筷子 chopsticks which are used for frying vegetables

2. 画画儿用/使的笔 a brush which is used for painting

III. Notes:

A. The meaning of VP yong/shi de N is 'the N which is used for VP.'

B.1. This structure is derived from the following: 'wei VP yong/shi de N,' 'N which is used for the purpose of VP.' For instance: 炒菜用/使的筷子 is derived from 为炒菜用/使的筷子 in the following manner:

	Modification	de N
CO-VP	M-VP	de N
wei VP	yong/shi	de N
( )VP	yong/shi	de N
(1) 炒菜	用/使	的筷子

B.2. The CO-VP 'wei NP' may be followed by a NP or a VP, but may be omitted only when wei (为) is followed by a VP:

(2) 为你用的钱 money spent on your behalf

*( )你用的钱 NA *(the money you spend/spent)

(3)	为买车用的钱	
	( )买车用的钱	the money to be used for buying a car

B.3. The VP in 'wei VP' must be a VO compound, including a longer modified VP. For instance:

*	为买用的钱	NA
*	( )买用的钱	NA
(4)	为买书用的钱	money for purchasing books
	( )买书用的钱	" "
(5)	为给你买车用的钱	money for getting you a car
	( )给你买车用的钱	" "
(6)	为送他上学用的车	car used to take him to school
	( )送他上学用的车	" "

B.4. Note that only yong and shi are used in this form which omits wei.

(7)	为做饭找的人	a helper employed for cooking
*	( )做饭找的人	NA
(8)	为炒菜拿的筷子	chopsticks taken for cooking
*	( )炒菜拿的筷子	NA
(9)	为画画儿买的笔	pen purchased for painting
*	( )画画儿买的笔	NA
(10)	为炒菜用的筷子	chopsticks to be used for cooking
	( )炒菜用的筷子	Same

B.5. VP *yong*/*shi* *de* N may be further abbreviated to VP *de* N.

(11) (为)打仗(用)的枪 gun used for war

打仗的枪

(12) (为)开会(用)的节目单 agenda for the meeting

开会的节目单

(13) (为)买车(用)的钱 money for buying a car

买车的钱

(14) (为)画画儿(用)的笔 brush for painting

画画儿的笔

B.6. However, not all phrases of the form VP *de* N are derived from *wei* VP *yong*/*shi* *de* N. For instance:

(15) 做饭的佐料 ingredients for cooking

= 为做饭用的佐料

(16) 给他的佐料 a. ingredients which are given to him, or,
b. ingredients to give to him

= 别人给他的佐料

= 为给他用的佐料

(17) 开车的执照 license for driving

(18) 开车的技巧 skills for driving

In conclusion, the basic structure VP *de* N may be derived from several different sources, one of which is *wei* VP *yong*/*shi* *de* N.

47 The Usage of you Aux VP/FVP le 又 Aux VP/FVP 了

I. Form:

you VP le

II. Examples:

A.1. 他又去了。 Now he is going.

A.2. 他又不去了。 He is not going anymore.

B.1. 他又想吃了。 Now he wants to eat.

B.2. 他又不想吃了。 He does not want to eat anymore.

C.1. 他又愿意了。 Now he is willing.

C.2. 他又不愿意了。 He is not willing anymore.

III. Notes:

A. This usage of you VP le indicates that the VP, whether affirmative or negative, is contrary to what was originally planned or expected.

B.1. The VP in you VP le is a Functive VP or an Auxiliary VP; it may be an affirmative VP or a negative VP.

B.2. In this usage the stress is on the VP rather than you....le.

(1) 他又接受了。 He accepts it now.

(2) 他又可以去了。 He may go now.

(3) 他又帮你忙了。 He will help you now.

(4) 他又说可以了。 He says It's O.K. now.

B.3. This particular usage always indicates a diametrically different VP than what is expected or what is previously declared. For instance:

(5) 甲：“快预备饭！老爷就要回来吃饭了！” A: "Qickly prepare dinner. The master is coming home for dinner."

乙：“他不是说在外头吃吗？怎么又回来吃了？” B: "Didn't he say he would eat out? How come he (changed his mind and) is coming home for supper?"

The remark by Speaker B clearly indicates that the master's decision to come home for dinner is entirely unexpected.

The previously determined course of action does not have to be explicitly stated in the context. For instance:

(6) 甲：“昨天跟你提要向你借的东西你还有吗？” A: "Do you still have the thing I wanted to borrow from you which I mentioned to you yesterday?"

乙：“还有，你怎么又决定借了？ B: "Yes, I do. Have you decided to borrow it now?"

By the structure we know that Speaker B implies that the 'decision to borrow it' is a reversal of what Speaker A decided yesterday.

B.5. In this usage neither you nor le may be omitted.

(7)° 他回来吃饭了 NA*(He did come back to eat)

(8)° 他又回来吃饭 NA*(He again/for the second time came back to eat)

B.4. This usage of you VP le does not give clear indication whether the VP has taken place, or whether VP is going to take place.

(9) 他又不去了。 He reversed himself in that he is not going.
He reversed himself and refused to go

(10) 他又吃了。 He reversed himself and at it.
He reversed himself and will eat it now.

(11) 他又不愿意作了。

He reversed himself and is not willing to do it.
He reversed himself and was unwilling to do it.

C.1. When you....le indicates repeated action, the stress is on you....le.

(12) 他昨天**又**回来**了**。

He came back again yesterday.

When you....le indicates a reversal of decision, the stress is on the VP.

(13) 他昨天又**来**了。

He reversed himself and came yesterday (after all).

C.2. When you....le indicates repeated action it may have quantitative statement placed after it.

(14) 他**又**回来**了两趟**。

He came back again twice.

When you....le indicates a reversal of decision, it may not have a quantitative statement.

(15)° 他又**来**了**两趟**。

NA °(He came twice vs. He went twice)

C.3. Even when the VP is a neg VP, the basically different stress pattern distinguishes the reversal from repeated absence of action (or inaction). For example:

(16) 他**又**不去**了**。

He refused to go for the second time.
Once again he refused to go.

(17) 他又**不去**了。

He reversed himself and now is not going.
He reversed himself and he refused to go.

D. Compare you....le with change of status le pattern.

D.1. Change of status le may be used with affirmative and negative Aux VP and negative FVP only. The you....le pattern indicating reversal of decision is used with affirmative or negative Aux VP or FVP.

D.2. When both *le* and *you....le* occur with negative FVP, the distinction lies in the fact that *you....le* indicates reversal of decision while *le* indicates a simple change in status. For instance:

(18)a 他不吃了。	He stopped eating. He does not eat anymore.
(18)b 他又不吃了。	He reversed himself and won't eat anymore.
(19)a 他爱看书了。	He likes to read now.
(19)b 他又爱看书了。	He reversed himself and is now fond of reading.
(20)a 他不打算作了。	He does not plan to do it again /anymore.
(20)b 他又不打算作了。	He reversed himself and won't do it now.

48 The Usage of you SVP le 又 SVP 了

I. Form:

you SVP le

II. Examples:

A.	这个又大了。	On the other hand this is too big.
B.	这个又干了。	This is too dry, on the other hand.

III. Notes:

A. The you....le (又 ... 了) used with a SVP indicates that the quality expressed by the SV is 'not desirable either,' whether the quality itself is a desirable quality or not. For example, pianyi (便宜) 'inexpensive,' is usually a desirable quality, but it is not when used with you....le.

(1)	十块钱太贵了，五块钱又便宜了我们订七块半吧！	$10 is too high, $5 is too low on the other hand. Let's set the price at $7.50.

B.1. The structure you....le may be used with any SV, whether single syllable or double syllable, whether affirmative or negative, whether of yin quality or yang quality.

(2)	又大了。	This on the other hand is too big.
(3)	又小了。	This on the other hand is too small.
(4)	又不够了。	This on the other hand is too insufficient.
(5)	又复杂了。	This on the other hand is too complicated.

B.2. The intensifier adverb tai (太) may be used with the SV in this structure but the meaning remains the same.

(2) 这个又大了。
这个又太大了。
This on the other hand is too big.

B.3. The stress in this structure, you SVP le, is on the SVP, not on you....le.

(6) 这样作又不公平了。 This way of handling it is, on the other hand, unfair.

(7) 不加水又干了。 If you do not add water, on the other hand it will be too dry.

B.4. The SVP in you SVP le may be used with youxie-(有些), -yidiar (一点儿), or duoshao....yidiar (多少 ....一点儿).

(8)a 这个又有些高了。 This, on the other hand, is somewhat too tall.

(8)b 这个又高了一点儿。 This, on the other hand, is a bit too tall.

8(c) 这个又多少高了一点儿。 This, on the other hand, is more or less a bit too tall.

C. Compare with the other functions of you....le.

The different stress patterns distinguish the meaning of you....le.

(9)a 这个又高了。 This again is too tall. (This was once before considered too tall)

(9)b 这个又高了。 This, on the other hand, is too tall. (The other one is perhaps too short but this one is too tall for our purpose)

(10)a 这个又不够了。 This again is insufficient. (It was insufficient once before)

(10)b 这个又不够了。 This, on the other hand, is insufficient. (Previous one is perhaps too much for our purpose. This one is too little)

D. Compare with *tai*....*le*.

The adverb *tai* (太) is an intensifier indicating extreme degree. Thus when *tai*....*le* is used with a SV, it indicates that the SV is excessive. It may mean either desirably excessive as in *na tai hao le* (那太好了) 'this is terrific!' or undesirably excessive as in *na tai hao le* (那太好了) 'this is too good (for this.)'

On the other hand, *you* SVP *le* indicates that the SV is undesirably excessive for a particular purpose in addition to some other quality which has already been proven to be undesirably excessive. Thus, *you* SVP *le* may also be expressed as *you tai* SVP *le*.

49 The Usage of Youde VP/S 有的 VP/S

I. Forms:

A. youde Topic Comment

B. Topic youde VP

II. Examples:

A.1.	有的我买	Some (of them) I would buy.
A.2.	有的他们想看	Some (of these) they want to read.
B.1.	他有的干	I have things to do.
B.2.	他们都有的穿	They all have things to wear.

III. Notes:

A.1. youde (有的) may refer to a part of a whole, either small or large quantity, as in Form A. youde may also mean that there is a certain quantity of something which is larger than the desired or necessary quantity and therefore comes to mean 'a lot' as in Form B.

A.2. In both forms, youde is (1) indefinite in number and (2) indefinite in quantity and reference. Thus, youde refers to an unknown quantity of unspecified articles.

B.1. In Form A, youde, meaning part of a whole or portion of a lot, is a Topic Word; it is always used in the topic position of a T-C construction, whether it is a subject or an object. For instance:

	TOPIC	COMMENT		
		Topic	Comment	
(1)	有的	我	喜欢	Some (of these) I like.

(2) 他 有的 能吃 Some (of these) he can eat.

(3) 这些东西 有的 是我的 Some of these things are mine.

youde in both (1) and (2) is the object of its verb respectively, while youde in (3) is a subject.

B.2. youde may be used with a noun as in youde shu (有的书), 'some books,' youde ren (有的人), 'some people.' The resulting form youde N is more specific than youde in reference but still indefinite in quantity.

(4) 有的人喜欢你 Some people like you.

(5) 有的他喜欢 Some he likes.

(6) 他有的书想卖 Some books he will sell.

B.3. The negative version of Form A youde is meiyou VP de, not mei youde. In other words, the negative version of (1) is (1)a, not (1)b below:

(1) 有的我喜欢

(1)a 没有我喜欢的

*(1)b 没有的我喜欢 NA

The negative version of Form A youde N is meiyou N, not meiyoude N. For example, the negative versions of (4), (5), and (6) are (4)a, (5)a, and (6)a respectively:

(4) 有的人喜欢你

(4)a 没有人喜欢你

(5) 有的 他喜欢

(5)a 没有人他喜欢

(6) 他有的书想卖

(6)a 他没有书想卖

C.1. In Form B youde refers to the existence of certain unspecified things of an unspecified quantity. However, that unspecified quantity is subjectively considered by the speaker to be 'more than a bare minimum' or 'more than enough.' Therefore wo youde gan means that 'there will be enough work to keep me busy.' On the other hand, wo you shi gan means 'I have work to do.' you shi gan is nothing more than 'to have work to do,' which gives no indication of the quantity of work. Compare the following:

(7)甲：“你在家做什么呢？”	A: "What are you going to do all by yourself?
乙：“您不用管了，我有的干。”	B: Don't worry about me. There will be something to keep me busy."
(8)甲：“你在家做什么呢？”	A: "(same question)"
乙：“你不用管了,我有事做,我要作报告呢。”	B: "Don't worry about me. I have work to do. I am going to work on my term paper."

C.2. In Form B, youde is not a topic word, while youde in Form A is. youde in Form B is derived from verb object you N; the N is replaced by de, which is a noun substitute. The structure wo youde gan is derived from (wo) you ke V de N .[1]

TOPIC	COMMENT	
	Verb	Object
wo	you	ke-V de N
我	有	可干的事

我有可干的事 → 我有事可干
→ 我有的可干
→ 我有的干

The negative version of youde is meide. Therefore, the negative versions for (9) and (10) are (9)a and (10)a.

(9) 我有的干

(9)a 我没的干

(10) 我們都有的穿

(10)a 我們都没的穿

C.4. youde V of Form B may be modified by adverbs or Aux V. For instance:

(11) 这回我可有的干了。 Now I finally have something to eat.

(12) 他真没的吃。 He really has nothing to eat.

(13) 他也有的买。 There still are enough things for him to buy.

(14) 他們应该有的穿。 They should have enough to wear.

C.5. The topic can be omitted if it is understood from the context.

(15) 有的说就说，不必吞吞吐吐的。 Don't hesitate. If (you) have something to say, say it.

(16) 有的吃有的穿大家就该知足。 Having food in our stomach and having clothes on our back, we should be contented.

C.6. Form B may take le (了), ne (呢), ma (吗), and ba (吧) as sentence particles:

(17) 这回他可有的批评了。 This time he finally has things to criticize.

(18) 这孩子将来有的受呢。

[This child will have plenty to suffer from.] This child will face a lot of hardship in the future.

(19) 他今天晚上有的吃吗？

Does he have anything to eat tonight?

(20) 这一大堆文件都得审核，
你承认你有的干了吧！

This whole stack of documents must be examined. Now, you must admit that you have enough to do!

Note that in the above examples these particles le, ne, ma, and ba are related to the verb following youde, i.e., 批评，受，吃，干.
On the surface, Form B might appear to be an "Aux V," but there are significant characteristics peculiar to youde.

D. Compare youde and Aux V:

D.1. An Aux V may have affirmative-negative forms neng bu neng, keyi bu keyi, etc., which is a question pattern. youde may not. youde meide means 'those which one has plus those which one does not have.'

D.2. An Aux V can be used independently. "Ni neng lai ma?" "Neng." "Wo keyi lai ma?" "Keyi."

youde may not be used independently. "Ta youde gan ma?" "Youde gan." *"Youde." NA

E. Form A and Form B compared.

E.1. Form A is a noun phrase; its full form is youde N. Form B is a verb phrase, it is derived from a Verb-Object form of you N.

E.2. In terms of a sentence structure, Form A, "youde Topic Comment", is derived from Subject-Verb-Object by transposing the object to the topic position:

Subject-verb-object (youde) ⟶ Object (youde) subject - verb

Form B: Topic *youde* Object is an imbedded sentence structure, Subject-Verb Phrase[1] - Verb Phrase[2], and is the result from the following derivation:

Subject - Verb (*you*) - Object (modified N)

E.3. The negative form of Form A, *youde* Topic Comment, is *meiyou* Topic Comment *de*. The negative form of Form B, Topic *youde* Comment, is Topic *meide* Commment.

E.4. In Form A, if sentence particles *le*, *ma*, *ne*, and *ba* are used, they are used in construction with the verb in the structure, not with *youde*:

youde *wo* *mai* *le*

youde *xihuan* *ta* *ma*?

In Form B, these sentence particles are used in construction with *youde*:

ta *youde* *gan* *le*

E.5. Form A means a portion of the whole of something. Therefore it is translated as 'some' or 'some N.' Form B means 'there is something to V' or 'there is more than the sufficient thing to V.' Thus Form B not only indicates 'something' but also conveys a sense of larger quantity.

---

[1] The source structure is *you* *ke* V *de* N. *ke* is an essential element and is not replaceable by other adv/aux, such as 应当 V *de* N or 能 V *de* N. The latter two will not be transformed to 有 N 能 V or 有 N 应当 V and still be acceptable as meaning 有 *de* 能 V or 有 *de* 应当 V.

我有的能作 = 我有的应当作 : 有的 = 有的 in Form A

我有的可干 = 我有的干 : 有的 = 有的 in Form B

50 The Usage of youdeshi 有的是

I. Forms:

A. youdeshi...NP

B. NP^1 youdeshi NP^2

C. NP youdeshi

II. Examples:

A.1.	有的是钱。	There is a lot of money.
A.2.	有的是人要来。	There are a lot of people who want to come.
B.1.	他有的是钱。	He has a lot of money.
B.2.	钱有的是。	There are a lot of books on the table.
C.1.	桌子上有的是书。	[As for the money, there is a lot.] There is a lot of money.
C.2.	要来的人有的是。	[As for the people who want to come, to come, there are a alot.] There are a lot of people who want to come.

III. Notes

A. youdeshi (有的是) is a verb meaning 'to have a lot of.'

B.1. youdeshi is an indivisible verb construction. Therefore it can be used as a main verb in a sentence construction. For example:

	TOPIC	COMMENT		
	Subject	Main Verb	Object	
(1)	我	看	书	I read books.
(2)	我	有的是	钱	I have read a lot of books.

B.2. The differences between youdeshi and other verbs used as main verbs in sentence constructions are the following:

B.2.a. youdeshi cannot be negated. For example:

AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE	
我看书	→	我不看书	(correct)
我有的是书	→	* 我没有的是书	(NA)

B.2.b. Its negative counterpart is simply meiyou (没有) but never *meiyoudeshi (没有的是). For example:

(3) 书有的是，报没有   There are a lot of books, but no newspapers.

B.2.c. It cannot be suffixed with an aspect marker, such as le (了), ne 呢 , zhe (着), guo (过), etc. For example:

With suffix le

(4) 我看书了   I read books

° 我有的是书了。   NA °(Now I have a lot of books.)

With suffix ne

(5) 我看书呢。   I am reading a book.

* 我有的是书呢   NA

With suffix zhe

(6) 我看着书呢。   I am reading a book.

* 我有的是着书呢   NA

With suffix guo

(7) 我看过书。 I have read books before.

* 我有的是过书 NA

B.3. The similarities of youdeshi and other verbs are: .

B.3.a. Tts object can be transposed to the topic position.

(8) 他看书 → 书他看 (correct)

(9) 他有的是书 → 书他有的是 (correct)

B.3.b. A verb phrase constructed using youdeshi can be followed by another verb phrase, making a sequence of verb phrases. For example:

	TOPIC	COMMENT		
	Subject	VP^1	VP^2	
(10)	我	上学	念书	I go to school to study.
(11)	我	有的是工夫	念书	I have a lot of time to study.

B.3.c. Since it is a verb construction centered around you(有), it shares certain features of the verb you. it may have either a personal noun, a personal pronoun, or a place word expression as its topic. For example:

Personal noun:

(12) 学生们有的是主意。 Students have a lot of ideas.

Personal pronoun:

(13) 他们有的是钱。 They have a lot of money.

(14) 谁有的是钱? Who has a lot of money?

Place word expressions:

(15) 北京有的是有名的学校。 There are a lot of well-known schools in Peking.

(16)	屋子里有的是椅子。	There are a lot of chairs in in the room.
(17)	这儿有的是钢笔。	There are a lot of pens here.
(18)	哪儿有的是这种花？	Where are there a lot of flowers of this kind?

B.4. The expression in Form A is a phrase, which can be used by itself.

(19)	问："有铅笔吗？"	Question: "Are there pencils?"
	答："有的是"。	Answer: "There are a lot."

B.5. The NP in Form A can be of any of the following: simple noun (25), . compound noun (26), and modified noun (27), (28), and (29).

(20)	有的是纸。	There is a lot of paper.
(21)	有的是研究工具书。	There are a lot of research books.
(22)	有的是好看的花。	There are a lot of pretty flowers.
(23)	有的是你喜欢的画。	There are a lot of paintings that you like.
(24)	有的是要念书的人。	There are a lot of people who want to study.

B.6. Form B is a Topic-Comment construction in which youdeshi is the main verb: the topic NP^1 may be a personal noun, a personal pronoun, or a place word expression (see III-3.d); and NP^2 may be any of the noun constructions illustrated in section III-5 above.

B.7. Form C is also a Topic-Comment construction. However, youdeshi makes up the entire comment part of this construction, in the form of

TOPIC	COMMENT	
X	有的是	(As for X, there is/are a lot of) There is/are a lot of X.

B.8. In Form C,NP^1 can be any of the noun constructions illustrated in section III-5. For example,

(25)	画有的是。	There are a lot of paintings (simple noun).
(26)	研究工具有的是。	There are a lot of research tools.
(27)	画画儿的笔有的是。	There are a lot of paint brushes.
(28)	你要的东西有的是。	There are a lot of things you wanted.
(29)	小學老师有的是。	There are a lot of primary school teachers.

B.9. Other possible translations are 'plenty of' or 'many.' For example:

(30)	有的是笔。	There are plenty of pens.
(31)	有的是人要来。	There are many people waiting to come.

B.9. Contrast youdeshi and you hen duo (有很多)

B.9.a. The construction of youdeshi is indivisible. The construction of you hen duo is you (有) plus hen duo (很多). In other words, though the English translation may be similar, there are the following differences:

(32) 他—有的是—书

(33) 他—有—很多—书

In sentence (32), youdeshi is the main verb; it governs a simple unmodified unmodified object shu(书) In sentence(33), you is the main verb; it governs a modified object hen duo shu.

B.9.b. In terms of meaning, youdeshi implies a definitive tone, relatively authoritative in describing something being numerous or plentiful. In the following sentences, where youdeshi is used, there is a built-in element of emphasis in the modification. Where you hen duo is used, such emphasis has to be indicated by intonation. For instance:

(34) 问：“北方有小麦吗？” Q: "Is there wheat in the north?"

(34)a 答：“有，北方有很多小麦。” A: "Yes. There is plenty of wheat in the north."

(34)b 答：“有，北方**有**很多小麦。” Yes. There is plenty of wheat in the north."

(34)c 答：“有，北方有**很多**小麦。” "Yes. There is plenty of wheat in the north."

(34)d 答：“有，北方**有的是**小麦。” "Yes. There is plenty of wheat wheat in the north. (no doubt about it)"

(35) 问：“我的本子丢了，怎么办呢？” Q: "I lost my notebook. What am I to do?"

答：“本子**有的是**又不貴，再买一个好了。” A: "There are a lot of notebooks (available). They are not expensive either. Why don't you get another one?"

C. Ambiguity in the usage of youdeshi.

C.1. There is often a high degree of ambiguity when youdeshi is used in a sentence construction. For example ta youdeshi shu (他有的是书) can be translated differently according to two different structural analyses:

Analysis (i):

TOPIC	COMMENT	
他有的 (N)	是中国书	(The things) he has are Chinese books. What he has are Chinese books.

Analysis (ii):

TOPIC	COMMENT		
他	有的是	中国书	He has a lot of Chinese books.

Analysis (i) uncovers a "Topic-Identification" construction, in which the topic ta you de (他有的) is being identified by the comment zhong guo shu (中国书). Analysis (ii) is a "Topic-Function" construction, in which the topic is ta, and the comment informs the reader what the subject of the sentence does.

C.2. To clarify or identify which structure is the correct one in a given context, the following method may be used:

C.2.a. negation: The Topic-Identification construction can be negated, while the Topic-Function construction cannot be.

他有的是中国书→他有的不是中国书(correct)

他有的是中国书 $\xrightarrow{\circ}$ 他没有的是中国书NA   o (What he does not have are Chinese books.)

C.2.b. Transposition of object: The Topic-Identification construction cannot accomodate the transposition of objects, while the Topic-Function construction can.

他有的是中国书 → 中国书他有是 (correct)

他有的是中国书 → * 中国书他有的是 (NA)

C.2.c. Intonation features: The Topic-Identification construction may have two possible pauses, before and after shi (是); while the other may have a pause only before youdeshi.

C.3. A second type of ambiguity arises from the translation to English and may be illustrated by the following sentences:

(36) 有的是可买的书。	There are plenty of books worth studying.
(37) 有的是书可买。	" "

The basic difference between these two sentences lies in their structures, as shown in the following analysis:

For (36):

TOPIC	COMMENT		
	Verb	Object	
		Modifier	Noun
	有的是	可买的	书

For (37):

TOPIC		COMMENT
Verb	Object	
有的是	书	可买

C.4. Based on the analysis above, the structure in (36) is a verb followed by a modified object, and in (37) a Topic-Description construction where *kemai* describes *youde shi shu*. This basic difference entails the following characteristics:

C.4.a. Modification: Modifiers of nouns can be added to the object of (36). Modifiers may be added to both Topic^2 and Comment^2 of (37).

(38) (from (36))有的是可买的有意思的书。 There are a lot of *interesting books* worth buying.

(39) (from (37))有的是有意思的书可买。 There are a lot of *interesting* books *indeed* worthy of being bought.

C.4.b. Extension: Adding a Topic. One may add a topic to sentence (36) without changing the basic structure. When one adds a topic to sentence (37) the basic structure undergoes a change.

(40) (from (36))他有的是可买的书。 He has a lot of books worth buying.

	TOPIC	COMMENT			
		Verb	Object		
			Modifier	Noun	
(36)		有的是	可买的	书	
(40)	他	有的是	可买的	书	Remains unchanged.

(41) (from (45)) 这儿有的是书可买　　There are plenty of books worth buying here.

(41) a	TOPIC	COMMENT		
		Topic	Comment	
(37)		有的是书	可买	Remains unchanged.
(41)	这儿	有的是书	可买	

(41) b	TOPIC^1	COMMENT^1		TOPIC^2	COMMENT^2
		Verb	Object		
	这儿	有的是	书	这儿的书	可买

In other words, when supplied with a topic, sentence (41) reveals two different structures, the first resembling the original sentence (37) and the second revealing a compound sentence structure, where the two topics (TOPIC^1 and TOPIC^2) are identical in their reference.

C.4.c. Extension: Adding Comment. Sentence (36) may have an additional comment, but sentence (37) may not have a second comment.

(42) (from (36)) 有的是可买的书贵。　　There are plenty of books worth buying which are expensive.

C.4.d. Transformation: Sentence (36) may be transformed into one form, but sentence (37) may be transformed into two forms:

BASIC SENTENCE → TRANSFORMED SENTENCE

(36) 有的是**可买的书** → **可买的书**有的是

(37) 有的是**书可买** → 有的是**可买的书**

→ **可买的书**有的是

C. .e. Negation: Sentence (36) cannot be negated, though it does have a negative counterpart, while sentence (37) can be readily negated.

BASIC SENTENCE → NEGATED SENTENCE

(44) 有的是可买的书: **没有**可买的书

(45) 有的是书可买: **没有**书可买 :

C. .f. Usage: Sentence (45) is used more frequently than sentence (44).

51 The Usage of youxie 有些

I. Forms:

- A. youxie NP
- B. youxie SVP
- C. youxie FVP

II. Examples:

A.	他有些积蓄.	He has some savings.
B.1.	他有些强壮了。	He is a bit stronger now.
B.2.	他有些粗鲁.	He is somewhat too civilized.
C.	这件事有些叫人为难.	This matter is rather too difficult for me.

III. Notes:

A.1. The dictionary meaning of the term youxie (有些) is often simply given as "some" before a NP and "somewhat" before a VP.

A.2. Youxie is a complex expression and may be replaced by youde (有的 "some(one)," youyidiar (有一点) "some(quantity)," or you Nu M "small number of N."

A.3. Youxie is one of the few occurrences of xie (些) as a quantitative suffix. Others are:

ADV-xie: haoxie 好些 (1) 好些人不懂。	(There are) a good deal of people (who) do not understand it.
NU-xie: yixie 一些 (2) 给他一些糖。	Give him some candy.

PRON-xie: mouxie （某些）

(3) 对某些人有用。 — It's useful to certain people.

zhemexie （这么些）

(4) 这么些人没工作。 — This many people are jobless.

namexie （那么些）

(5) 那么些事待清理。 — That many cases are waiting to be worked on.

QW-xie: naxie （哪些）

(6) 哪些书你要？ — Which books do you want?

SPE-xie: zheixie （这些）

(7) 这些书我要。 — I want these books.

neixie （那些）

(8) 那些书你拿走。 — You take those books with you.

SV-xie : daxie （大些）

(9) 这个大些。 — This is a bit bigger.

V-xie: yongxie （用些）

(10) 用些钱买书。 — Use some money to buy books.

B.1. Form A is youxie followed by a NP. The NP may be a simple noun (11), a modified noun (12), a noun which may be quantified by a specific number (13), or a noun which may not be quantified by a specific number (14).

(11) 他有些钱。 — He has some money.

(12) 他有些名贵的画。 — He has some famous paintings.

(13) 他有些画画儿的笔。 — He has some painting brushes.

(14) 他有些力量。 — He has a little power.

B.2. One of the characteristics of xie is that though it is a quantitative word, it may be placed directly before a noun without a measure. Both (15)a and (15)b are acceptable.

(15)a 有些枝笔。　　　　Some pens.

(15)b 有些(　)笔。　　　　"　"

Furthermore, youxie is derived from youyixie. The number yi may be omitted:

(16)a 有一些人。　　　　Some people.

(16)b 有(　)些人。　　　　"

While either the number yi or the measure or both may be omitted, they may not be used concurrently.

(17)a 有一些(　)笔

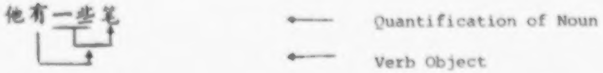
(17)b 有(　)些枝笔

(17)c 有(　)些(　)笔

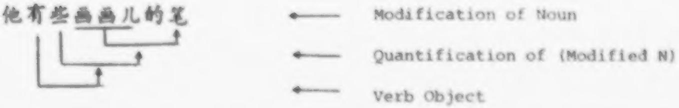
* 有一些枝笔　　　　NA

B.3. The underlying structure of youxie NP is as follows:

(11) 他有些笔


他有一些笔
Quantification of Noun
Verb Object

(12)


他有些画画儿的笔
Modification of Noun
Quantification of (Modified N)
Verb Object

The syntactical relationship demonstrated here is: you is the main verb of the sentence, xie is abbreviated from yi xie, a quantifier of the noun-modified or simple. Thus, xie is part of the NP object.

B.4. There are no restrictions on the type of modifiers which may precede the Noun object. For instance:

(18) 把屋子漆白了，可以有些大的感觉。	Painting the room white will give you a feeling of spaciousness.
(19) 为什么一进这间屋子就有些凄凉的感觉。	For unknown reasons, one gets something of a feeling of desolation as soon as one enters the room.

B.5. In this usage, youxie may be replaced by you ji-M for nouns which may be quantified by specific numbers, countable nouns, and you yidiar for nouns which may not be quantified by specific numbers, noncountable nouns.

(13) 他有些画画儿的笔——→他有几枝画画儿的笔

(14) 他有些力量 ——→ 他有一点力量

B.6. When youxie NP appears in a Topicless construction (20), it becomes the topic:

	TOPIC	COMMENT		
		Topic	Comment	
		Verb/Obj	VP	
(20)	Ø	有(一)些人	不懂	[There are some people (who) do not understand it.]

B.6.a. In this usage, youxie NP also occurs in the topic position and must be followed by a VP which is a comment of the FVP, SVP, EVP or LVP type.

(21) 有些工作是你的，有些是他的。	Some of the works here are yours, some are his.
(22) 有些工作容易，有些工作难。	Some works are easy and some are difficult.

(23) 有些工作归你管。 Some work is in your charge.

In short, *youxie* is a topic phrase.

B.6.b. It is this usage of *youxie* NP which may be replaced by *youde*.

(24) 有些事情他作。 [Something he takes care of]
He takes care of something.

有的( )他作。

B.7. Related to this form is the following usage of *youxie*:

(25) 这儿的东西，有些是你的。 Among these things here, some are yours.

(26) 他的朋友，有些他喜欢。 Among his friends, some he likes.

Here *youxie* is preceded by a statement of a whole and *youxie* indicates a part of that whole. Thus, it is used to mean "some of the entire N."

B.7.a. In this case, *youxie* is abbreviated from *youxie* N when the N is stated in the preceding phrase:

(25) 这儿的东西，有些(东西)是你的。

(26) 他的朋友，有些(朋友)他喜欢。

B.7.b. *youxie* is used as a topic pronoun phrase, either as a subject or as an object.

	TOPIC	COMMENT		
		Topic	Comment	
(25)	这儿的东西	有些	是你的	(*youxie*=subject)
(26)	他的朋友	有些	他喜欢	(*youxie*=object)

B.7.c. In this usage, *youxie* may occur in pairs:

(25)a 这儿的东西，有些是你的有些是他的。 [Of these things, some are yours, some are his] Some of these things are yours, and some are his.

(26)a 他的朋友，有些他喜欢有些他不喜欢。 Some of his friends he likes, some he does not.

B.7.d. The pronoun phrase youxie may be replaced by youde or you ji-M:

(25)这儿的东西 { 有的是你的。
有几件是你的。

(26)他的朋友 { 有的他喜欢。
有几个他喜欢。

C. In Form B, youxie is followed by SVP. The SVP may be affirmative or negative. However, youxie SVP has a connotation of excessiveness. For example:

(27)这个有些简单。 This is a bit too simple.

(28)这个有些复杂。 This is a bit too complicated.

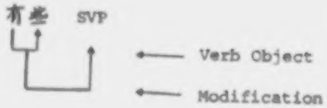
While youxie SVP has a connotation of excessiveness, youxie SVP followed by a change of status marker le (了) does not and is a neutral statement.

(29)这个有些值钱了。 This is becoming somewhat valuable.

(30)他的身体有些复原了。 His health is somewhat better.

Thus, youxie SVP is translated as 'a bit too SV' while youxie SVP le is translated as 'to become somewhat SV.

C.1. The underlying structure of youxie SVP is that youxie is used as an adverbial phrase modifying the SVP.



For instance:

TOPIC	COMMENT		
	Adv.	SV	
这个	很	便宜	Very inexpensive
	非常	便宜	Unusually inexpensive
	不太	便宜	Not quite inexpensive
	比较	便宜	Comparatively inexpensive
	有些	便宜	A bit too inexpensive

youxie is used just as any other adverb which modifies a SV.

C.1.a. The SVP after youxie may be either affirmative or negative.

(31)a 有些簡单	a bit too simple
(32)b 有些不簡单	a bit too complicated

C.1.b. youxie SVP may be used to modify a N.

(33) 有些复杂的事你不用管.	You are not required to take care of cases that are too complicated.
(34) 有些不清楚的句子请改一下.	Please correct these overly ambiguous sentences.

C.1.c. Form B youxie may be replaced by youyidiar SV or shaoxian SV or bijiao SV le yidiar.

(28) 这个**有些**复杂

(28)a 这个**有一点**复杂

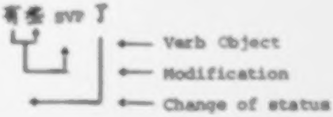
(28)b 这个**稍微**复杂

(28)c 这个**比较**复杂**一点儿**

youxie SVP may also be used following V *de*.

(35) 写的有些复杂。	He always writes in an overly complicated manner.

C.2. The underlying structure of *youxie* SVP *le* is the following:



Again, *youxie* is an adverbial modifier of the SVP. For instance:

TOPIC	COMMENT		
	SVP	*le*	
他	大	了	He has become big.
书	很**貴**	了	Books are very expensive now.
书	**不太**貴	了	Books are less expensive now.
书	**有些**貴	了	Books are somewhat expensive now.

C.3. In this adverbial usage, the form *youxie* may be replaced by *you(yi)dier* as in:

(28) 这个**有些**复杂 ——→ 这个**有一点**复杂

(29) 这个**有些**值钱了 ——→ 这个**有一点**值钱了

D. In Form C, youxie is followed by a FVP. For instance:

(36)他要这样作就有些不讲理了。 If he behaves this way, it is somewhat unreasonable.

(37)你说的有些叫人不解。 What you said [makes people not understand] confuses people somewhat.

(38)他的作风有些标奇立异。 This approach of his is rather gimmicky.

The FVP in (36) is a simple FVP, in (37) a pivotal FVP, and in (38) a formula expression.

Form C, youxie FVP, expresses the speaker's judgment and evaluation of the topic. The evaluation is always that the situation is not desirable.

For instance:

(39)a 他有些乱来/胡搞 (act recklessly)

(39)b 他有些不讲理 (do not follow reason)

(39)c 这个有些划不来 (not worth it)

(39)d 这件事有些看不惯 (do not tolerate it)

(39)e 这件事有些叫人为难 (put others in a dilemma)

(39)f 他有些让人怀疑 (make people suspect him/it)

(39)g 他有些胡作非为 (act recklessly)

(39)h 他有些不知所措 (does not know what to do)

etc.

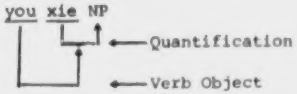
D.2. youxie here may be replaced by you(yi)diar:

(39)a 他有些胡来⟶他有点胡来

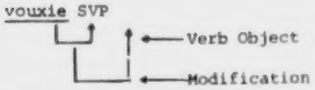
E. In summary:

E.1. In terms of structure:

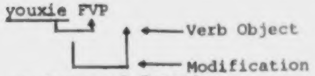
a.


you xie NP
Quantification
Verb Object

b.


youxie SVP
Verb Object
Modification

c.


youxie FVP
Verb Object
Modification

E.2. In terms of function:

a.	youxie NP:	VERB(you) OBJECT ((yi)xie NP)
b.	youxie SVP:	ADVERBIAL PHRASE (youxie) SVP
c.	youxie FVP:	ADVERBIAL PHRASE (youxie) FVP

E.3. In terms of meaning:

a.	youxie NP:	There are some NP.
	youxie (NP):	some - Pron
b.	youxie SVP:	(The topic) is a bit too SVP.
c.	youxie SVP le:	(The topic) has become a bit SVP.

E.4. In terms of substitutes:

a.	youxie NP:	you(yi)diar N, youji-M N
	youxie (NP):	youde, youde N, youji-M N
b.	youxie SVP:	you(yi)diar tai SVP, shaoxian SVP, bijiao SVP le yidiar
	youxie SVP le:	you(yi)diar SVP le
c.	youxie FVP:	you(yi)diar FVP

52 The Usage of Zaiye neg VP le 再也 neg VP 了

I. Form:

zaiye Neg VP le

II. Examples:

A.	再也不去了。	She will never go there again.
B.	再也没听过这么好听的故事了。	He never again heard such an interesting story.
C.	再也走不过去了。	We will never be able to pass over.

III. Notes:

A. Briefly, this structure indicates that the VP will never be repeated again.

B.1. The Neg VP in this structure can be any of the following forms:

不 VP:	不去 不吃
没 VP 过:	没去过 没吃过
Resultative:	走不过去 学不完
Imperative:	别抽烟 别闹

B.2. zaiye Neg VP le constitutes a comment which may occur with or without a topic. Its topic can be animate or inanimate. For example:

	TOPIC	COMMENT	
(1)	Ø	再也不去了	I will never go there again.
(2)	他	再也不去了	He will never go there again.

(3) 这张画 再也卖不出去了。 This painting will never be sold again.

(4) 这种建议 再也不考虑了。 This kind of proposal will never again be considered.

(5) 这个学生 再也不能上王先生的课了。 This student will never be permitted to attend Mr. Wang's class again.

B.4. zaiye Neg VP le always implies an unyielding determination or unchanging course of action. It may be in the past, in the present, or in the future. For example:

Distant past:

(6) 一九四八年到美国以后，他再也没回过中国。 Ever since he arrived in the USA in 1948, he has never been back to China.

(7) 昨天他听了演讲后，就决定再也不抽烟了。 Yesterday, after he attended the lecture, he decided never to smoke again.

(8) 从此以后你再别生气了。 From now on, you should never again lose your temper.

(9) 从明天起再也不抽烟了。 Starting from tomorrow, I will never again smoke.

B.5. The particle le (了) indicates a change of status or the occurrence of a newly arrived situation. It is used in this pattern to emphasize the meaning 'never again.' (II-A and II-B)

When the verb suffix guo (过) is used, the particle le at the end of the structure is optional. For example:

(II-B) 再也没听过这么好听的故事了。

(6) 再也没过回中国。

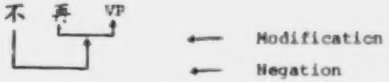
B.6. The comparison of zaiye Neg VP le and bu zai VP le.

B.6.a. In zaiye Neg VP le, the Neg VP may be a resultative compound, but in bu zai VP le, the VP may not be RV.

(10) 再也学不会 (correct)

* 不再学得会 NA

B.6.b. bu zai VP le is structured in the following way:



It is the negation of zai VP 'to VP again' or 'to repeat VP' and so bu zai VP is 'not to VP again' or 'not to repeat VP.'

zaiye Neg VP le is a structure derived from the following:

jiu shi zai VP^1 ye Neg VP^2 le

( ) zai VP^1 ye Neg VP^2 le

( ) zai( )ye Neg VP^2 le

= zai ye bu VP le

VP^1 indicates the circumstances in which an act of VP^2 may occur, such as:

有机会	there is an opportunity/ when opportunity arrives
有某种环境	there is a certain environment/when the environment presents itself
有合适的条件	there are suitable conditions/ when the proper conditions come along

有某种需要	there is a certain kind of need/when some kind of necessity comes along

or VP[1] represents a certain quality, such as:

(11) 这个就是再好也不要了。

这个(   )再(   )也不要了。

这个再也不要了。

Since *jiushi* X *ye* Neg Y is the structure meaning 'even X, Neg Y,' *zaiye* Neg VP *le* is derived from 'even if the situation presents itself again, will not VP,' or 'even if the circumstance occurred again did not VP.'

Thus the juxtaposition of *zai* (再) and *ye* (也) is not a simple matter of an adverb modifying another adverb.

53 The Usage of X zeyi, Y X 则已 , Y

I. Forms:

A. ....X zeyi, ruo....Y (jiu)....Z

B. ....X zeyi, yaoburan (jiu)....Z

II. Examples:

A.1.	不说则已，若说就得说清楚。	[If it is not said, then everything will be all right; if it is said, it must be said clearly.] You don't have to say it, but if you do it must be said clearly.
A.2.	说清楚则已，若说不清楚就会出麻烦。	[If it is said clearly, everything will be all right; if not, there will be trouble.] It had better be said clearly or else there will be trouble.
B.1.	不说则已，要不然得说清楚。	[If it is not said, then everything will be all right; otherwise, say it clearly.] You don't have to say it, but if you do, you must say it clearly.
B.2.	说清楚则已，要不然就会出麻烦。	[If it is said clearly, everything will be all right, otherwise, there will be trouble.] It had better be said clearly--otherwise there will be trouble.

III. Notes:

A. The expression zeyi (则已) is a classical phrase adapted to modern usage. ze (则) is equivalent to jiu (就), meaning 'then,' 'consequently,' 'therefore,' etc. yi (已) is equivalent to wanle

(完了), meaning 'finished,''completed,' 'accomplished,' or 'beyond salvation.'

The meaning of zeyi in this combined usage is similar to modern expressions such as bale (罢了), haole (好了), keyile (可以了), meiguanxile (没关系了), suanle (算了) or bianba (便罢).

In turn, these modern expressions may be translated into different English phrases, depending on the contexts, such as "that will be fine," "everything will be all right," "it is satisfactory or acceptable," "the issue is dropped," "it is finished," "it needs no further discussion," "no further consideration need be given," and others.

Because of the wide range of possible translations, it is most important to understand the basic function of zeyi in this structure.

B.1. The complete sentence in which zeyi is used is a compound sentence The part in which zeyi occurs always appears as the first component of such a compound sentence.

	COMPONENT I	COMPONENT II
(A)	....zeyi	ruo....(jiu)....
(B)	....zeyi	yaoburan (jiu).....

B.2. Component I is a complete Topic-Comment construction, though not a complete sentence, in which the word zeyi is the sole comment.

	COMPONENT I		COMPONENT II	
	Topic	zeyi		
(1)	你答应	则已 ……		If you promise, everything will be O.K.;
(2)	他不来	则已		If he is not coming, everything will be all right;

(3)	你答应替我办则已………	If you promise to do it for me, everything will be all right;
(4)	你来则已	If you come, everything will be O.K.;
(5)	他愿意则已………	If he is willing, everything will be all right;
(6)	你不买则已………	If you do not buy it, everything will be all right;
(7)	你不答应买外国货则已………	If you do not consent to buy foreign goods, everything will be O.K.;
(8)	他不拒绝我们的要求则已………	If she does not reject our demands, everything will be all right;
(9)	他接受我们的要求则已………	If they grant our request, everything will be all right;
(10)	说清楚了则已………	If it is explained clearly, everything will be all right;
(11)	洗得干净则已………	If it can be cleaned, everything will be all right;
(12)	他的书便宜则已………	If his books are inexpensive, everything will be all right;

From these illustrations, it is clear that the topic of the comment zeyi can be any of the following verb combinations:

Affirmative	(1), (3), (4), (5), (9), (10), (11), and (12)
Negative	(2), (6), (7), (8)
Simple Verb:	(1), (2), (4), (5), and (6)
Complex Verb:	(10) and (11)
Verb-Object:	(3), (4), (8), and (9)
Functive Verb:	(1) through (4) and (6) through (11)
SV:	(12)
Aux V:	(5)
Completion Aspect:	(10)

Incompletion Aspect: (1) through (9) and (11) and (12)

B.3. In terms of structure, the relationship between the two components is that of two parallel substructures in a compound. In terms of meaning, Component II is the consequence of the non-realization of Component I.

B.4. Component I, in which zeyi is used as presented above, indicates that the statement of action expressed by its topic is acceptable to either the speaker or the subject of the sentence (Component I plus Component II). The degree of acceptability ranges from the marginally acceptable to most desirable depending on the content of Component II. Furthermore, Component I requires that an alternative or the consequence of an alternative is either explicitly stated in Component II or implicitly understood. The following examples will illustrate these functions.

	COMPONENT I	(COMPONENT II)	
	X....zeyi	(....)	
(13)	你去则已，	（若不去，就在家帮我忙）	If you go, that is fine; (If not, you can stay home and help me.)
(14)	你去则已，	（若不去没有人代表我们）	If you go, everything will be O.K.;(if not, no one will represent us.)
(15)	你去则已，	（若不去我们取消你的会员资格）	If you go, the matter is settled; (if not, we will take away your membership.)

In the above illustrations, Component I remains unchanged, and zeyi indicates that ni qu (你去) is an acceptable proposition. In (13) ni qu is acceptable to wo (我), while in (14) it is not only "acceptable" but also "necessary" to women (我们). Finally, in (15) it is highly desirable to women.

In all three illustrations, Component II offers an alternative to ni qu (你去) and a statement to its consequence.

B.5. The structure of Component II may be either of the following:

	COMPONENT II	
	Topic	Comment
(A)	ruo....Y	(jiu)....Z
(B)	Ø	yaoburan (jiu)...Z

Here, in Form (A), ruo (若) is interchangeable with adverbs of supposition, such as ruoshi (若是), ruguo (如果), jiashi (假使), etc. The variable element Y represents the opposite of X in Component I.

	COMPONENT I	COMPONENT II	
(A)	X zeyi,	ruo Y (jiu) Z	
(B)	X zeyi,	yaoburan (jiu) Z	
(16)	去则已，	若不去就要受罚。	If you go, everything will be all right;but if you don't, you will be punished.
(17)	不去则已，	若去就要准备行李。	If you don't go, there is nothing to be done; but if you do go, you must get your baggage ready.
(18)	便宜则已，	若贵，就不要买。	If it is inexpensive, then go ahead as planned; otherwise, don't buy it.
(19)	高兴则已，	若烦，就别跟他提这件事。	If she is cheerful, then do it; otherwise, do not mention it to her.
(20)	这份工作你肯接则已，	若有困难，我们再商量。	If you are willing to accept the job, we will be pleased, but if you have some difficulty, (let me know) we will discuss it more.

There are cases in which X and Y are not diametrically opposed, as in sentences (16) through (18). The opposition between qu (去) and bu qu (不去) or gui (貴) and pianyi (便宜) is clear and explicit. In sentence (2), for instance, the X is 'willingness to accept a job,' and Y is 'having difficulties doing so.'

In Form (A), Z represents the consequence of Y, which is a specific alternative to X. In Form B, it indicates the consequence of failing to perform the action X.

B.6. In Chinese, a suppositional statement is often presented without any formal indicator (i.e., ruo (若), jiaru (假如), etc. Thus, in the same way, indicators such as ru (如), ruo (若), etc., may be omitted from Component II. For instance:

(21) 他肯来则已，
(若)不肯来我就对他不客气了。
If she is willing to come, then the matter is settled; but it she is not, then I will have to resort to some harsh methods.

(22) 你愿意则已，
(如)不愿意我也没办法。
If you are willing, then we will all be pleased, but if not, we cannot do much about it.

(23) 你觉得应当则已，
(假如)你觉得不应当为什么不向他道歉？
If you feel it is proper, then that is fine; otherwise why don't you go and apologize to him?

(24) 便宜则已，(要是)不便宜谁买？
If it is inexpensive, it is all right; otherwise, who is going to buy it?

(25) 他高兴则已，
(如果)不高兴谁也受不了。
When he is pleased, everything is fine; but when he is not, we all have to suffer.

B.7. The ruo Y part of the Component II may be replaced by yaoburan

(要不然), fouze (否则), buran (不然), etc.

C.1. In structural terms the following sentences are derived from X zeyi....:

(A) yaoshi X ze Z^1, yaoshi neg X ze Z^2

(B) yaoshi neg X ze Z^1, yaoshi X ze Z^2

(26) 去则已，不去就麻烦了。

(A) 要是去就罢了，要是不去就麻烦了。

If you go, everything is O.K.; but if not, there will be trouble.

(27) 没答应则已，答应了就得作准备。

(B) 要是没答应就算了，要是答应了就得做准备。

If you did not accept it, that is O.K.; but if you did, you must make preparations.

C.2. The wide range of acceptability of Component I as determined by Component II allows this structure to be used in many situations, ranging from the statement of alternatives to the statement of strong imperatives. For instance:

(28) 这次赚钱则已，若不赚钱就不想再干这行了。

If I make some money this time, everything will be all right; if not, I don't think I want to continue in this line of business.

(29) 这次赚钱则已，若不赚钱就别再跟我借钱！

You had better make some money this time; otherwise do not count on borrowing money from me again.

(30)	這次賺錢則已， 若不賺錢看他跟你吵的！	You had better make some money this time; otherwise, you just wait and see how he is going to yell at you!
(31)	這次賺錢則已， 若不賺錢就要你命！	You had better make some money, or else I am going to kill you!

As for meaning, as it was stated based on the given illustrations, Component II expresses the consequence of non-realization of Component I. However, whether variable X in Component I is merely acceptable or highly desirable cannot be determined only by zeyi. The degree of desirability of the first component is determined by the "consequence of non-realization" as expressed in the second component.

D. Whether the variable X is a highly desirable alternative, Component I can also be expressed as follows:

zuihao X, Y jiu Z

(32)	去則已，不去就不能吃飯。 → 最好去，不去就不能吃飯。	You had better go; otherwise, you won't be allowed to eat.
(33)	不去則已，去就別回來。 → 最好不去，去就別回來。	You had better not go; otherwise, you don't have to come back.

The difference is, X zeyi is much more emphatic than zuihao. The former is imperative, while the latter is merely suggestive.

E. Exceptional cases: there are occasions where the "consequence of non-realization of X" is withheld. In this case, it is an abbreviated form, and the unstated "consequence" is most severe, and highly unpleasant.

(34) 我听不見则已!
我听不見便罢!

Don't let me hear it,
or else!

54 The Usage of V^1-zhe V^1-zhe V^1-着 V^1-着

I. Form:

V^1-zhe-V^1-zhe, VP/S

II. Examples:

A.说着说着他抓起衣襟来擦眼泪。	In the midst of talking, he wiped his tears on his shirttail.
B.走着走着只见一片无穷尽的枯苇。	While walking, they saw a large patch of withered weeds.
C.讲着讲着语法，讲起别的词义来了。	In the midst of discussing grammar, (he) changed the subject and began to discuss semantics.

III. Notes:

A. This pattern indicates that as one performs an action, an unrelated action occurs simultaneously.

B.1. The repeated V-zhe is used as a MA and so may be used before a Topic-Comment construction, as in (1)a, or after the topic and before the comment, as in (1)b below.

(1)a 说着说着话，他站起来走了。	In the midst of a discussion, he stood up and left.
(1)b 他说着说着话站起来走了。	" "

B.2. The V in V^1-zhe-V^1-zhe may either be a single syllabic or a multi-syllabic verb:

(2)看着看着报他睡着了。	In the midst of reading the paper, he fell asleep.

(3) 溜跶着溜跶着他忽然想起他忘了锁门。
While taking a stroll, he suddenly remembered that he had forgotten to lock his door.

B.3. The V in V^1-zhe-V^1-zhe may be intransitive (4) or transitive (5) and (6). The object may be omitted (5) or stated (6). Note that the object, if stated, occurs only once and follows the pair of repeated V-zhe.

(4) 坐着坐着忽然来了一阵凉风他觉得特别的冷。
While sitting he felt a sudden cold breeze and felt extremely chilled.

(5) 等着等着他睡着了.
While waiting for them, he fell asleep.

(6) 等着等着门他睡着了。
" "

* 等着门等着门他睡着了.
NA

B.4. The V^1-zhe-V^1zhe structure itself must be affirmative.

* 不看着不看着他睡觉了.
NA

Only the VP which follows the V^1-zhe-V^1-zhe phrase may be negative.

(7) 我们谈着谈着话他不理我们了。
While talking to him, he suddenly stopped responding to us.

B.5. Although this pattern does not imply suddenness by itself, adverbs such as huran (忽然), turan (突然), yixiazi (一下子), etc. may be added to express suddenness, such as in (3) and (4).

B.6. V^1-zhe-V^1-zhe may never be used as an independent sentence.

* "卖着卖着"
NA

° "吃着吃着！"
(See sections C.3 and C.5 below)

C. Compare V-zhe and V^1-zhe-V^1-zhe.

C.1. Both V-zhe and V^1-zhe-V^{1}zhe may be followed by a VP.

(8) 他们走着说话。	They were walking and talking.
(9) 他们走着走着看见老刘了。	They met Lao Liu while walking on the street.

C.2. V-zhe is generally used after the topic, but may precede the topic for special emphasis.

(10) 走着道儿他要看书，在家里闲坐着书连碰都不碰。	While walking on the street he wants to read. Yet while sitting in the house he will not even touch books.

On the other hand, V^1-zhe-V^1-zhe may occur before the topic without special emphasis.

C.3. V-zhe may be used by itself as an imperative; V^1-zhe-V^1-zhe may not.

(11)a 拿着！拿着！	Please take it (please!).
(11)b 拿着！	Take it! (or else!)

C.4. Both V-zhe and V^1-zhe-V^1-zhe may be followed by an object.

(12)a 外面冷，你得穿着大衣出去。	It is cold outside and you must wear your coat when going out.
(12)b 他看着看着书，头疼起来了。	He got a headache when he was reading.

C.5. The imperative and independent usage of V-zhe, as illustrated in C-3, may be repeated for emphasis to indicate the speaker's earnestness or sincerity, or the speaker's attempt to persuade someone to do something.

(13) 拿着拿着！	Please take it!

When the verb requires an explicit object, it will be in the form of V^1-*zhe* O V^1-*zhe* O.

(14) 拿着这个！拿着这个！　　Hold this!

V^1-*zhe*-V^1-*zhe* may not be used independently, must not be used with the object repeated, but in the form of V-*zhe* V-*zhe* O, and is never used to indicate sincerity, earnestness, etc., as V-*zhe* does.

C.6. V-*zhe* VP may be used to refer to a future event; V^1-*zhe*-V^1-*zhe* usually refers to the past.

(15) 等一会儿吃着饭谈话。　　Later, we will chat while eating dinner.

(16) 吃着吃着饭他走了。　　While having his meal, he left.

However, V^1-*zhe*-V^1-*zhe* may refer to the future when used in a prediction or judgment of some kind, rather than the past, as illustrated below.

(17) 你看着吧！他看着看着书就会睡觉的。　　You will see, he will fall asleep while reading.

C.7. Most importantly, V-*zhe* VP indicates nothing other than the fact that both V and VP are happening simultaneously. On the other hand, in addition to the simultaneous occurrence of V and VP, V^1-*zhe*-V^1-*zhe* indicates that the VP is an event which happens independently of the V and could not normally be anticipated. Compare the following:

(18)a 他开着窗户上课。　　He (always) gives his classes with windows open.

(18)b 他开着开着窗户上课了。　　The bell rang while he was opening the window.

D. In summary, structurally V^1-*zhe*-V^1-*zhe* is not derived from V-*zhe* and these two forms do not share the same set of semantic interpretations.

55 The Usage of X zhiyu, Y X 之余 Y

I. Form:

X zhiyu, Y

II. Examples:

A.	失望之余，挂冠而去。	[Being extremely disappointed, he hung up his official helmet.] Being extremely disillusioned, he resigned.
B.	高兴之余，请大家去看电影。	Being extremely excited, he invited everybody to a movie.

III. Notes:

A. This structure loosely indicates that a course of action (Y) takes place either under the strong influence of X or because of X, or as an ultimate manifestation of X, etc., and that Y is carried out as a demonstration of X or with X.

A.2. X zhiyu provides the setting, or the cause for the second component, which states the result or consequence, thereby indicating a cause and effect relationship between the components.

B.1. The part X zhiyu is the first component of a compound sentence X zhiyu, Y, and never occurs alone.

B.2. In X zhiyu, the X can be any of the following:

a. Expressions of emotion:

shiwang	(失望)	despair
xingfen	(兴奋)	excitement
fennu	(愤怒)	anger

b. *Expressions of action:*

jiuzu fanbao (酒足饭饱) feasting

kuang yin (狂饮) feasting

However, the expressions of emotion are by far the most frequently used with *zhiyu*.

c. Verbs: *shiwang* (失望) lose hope

xingfen (兴奋) enjoy

SVs *gaoxing* (高兴) pleased

T-C *jiuzu* *fanbao* (酒足饭饱) [wine/liquor enough] [food full] thoroughly enjoy the feast

B.3. If the X is a SV in X *zhiyu*, the structure expresses 'being in the state of X to an extreme degree, so that....' or 'being in the state of X to the utmost extent, so that....,' or 'being in the unbearable state of X, so that....' For example:

(II-A)	失望之余，挂冠而去。	His resignation from his job is influenced by his disillusionment. -or- His disillusionment was so great, so unbearable, that he had to resign--a gesture which manifests his extreme disillusionment. -or- His disillusionment was so extreme, that he resigned.
(1)	得意之余大宴宾客。	He was so exulted, that he entertained everyone at a feast.

B.4. If X in X zhiyu is a FV, VP, or a T-C construction, X zhiyu expresses the fact that all the activities of X fail to bring satisfaction to the subject, or agent of action, and therefore certain other actions occur.

(2) 他们酒足饭饱之余，
就想如何去寻乐了。

After they had their fill,
they began to look for
other forms of enjoyment.

These people, having had a feast which satisfied their appetites, still were not content and thus began to look for other kinds of entertainment.

(3) 这组学生在游行示众之余，
又将曹汝霖的住宅捣毁
才整队返校。

This group of students,
having had a demonstration
march, further ransacked
the house of Cao Rulin,
and then and only then
returned to their school.

This group of students was still unsatisfied after having had a demonstration, so they went to destroy the residence of Cao. The act of destroying or ransacking Cao's house is the manifestation of their anger.

Therefore, zhiyu means 'having done X, furthermore....' or 'one did X, but did not stop there, and went on....'

C. X zhiyu and others compared.

C.1. X zhiyu and X zhihou compared.

Both are used as Component I in a compound sentence. X zhiyu reveals primarily a causal relationship and secondarily a sequential relationship between Component I and II. X zhihou reveals primarily a sequential relationship between X and Y.

(4) 酒足饭饱之后他大睡一觉。

After feasting, he fell
into a deep sleep.

Index

In order of occurrence in the text.

1. Adverb - Noun Phrase
    - MA NP VP
    - NP ADV NU M (N)
2. ai VP^{1} bu VP^{1}
    - ai VP^{1} bu VP^{1} de
    - Aux VP^{1} bu VP^{1}
    - Aux VP^{1} keshi bu VP^{1}
    - VP^{1} bu VP^{1} suibian
    - wulun VP^{1} bu VP^{1}
    - yaokan .... le
3. X ba, Y
    - jiaru .... ba, ...
    - jihuo .... ba, ...
    - jishi .... ba, ...
    - jiusuan .... ba, ...
    - na .... lai shuo/kan ba, ...
    - ping .... lai shuo/kan ba, ...
    - ruguo .... ba, ...
    - ruoshi .... ba, ...
    - yaoshi .... ba, ...
    - yi .... lai shuo/kan ba, ...
4. bu (VP) le
    - bu zai VP le
5. bu VP^{1} ye dei VP^{1}
    - bu Aux VP^{1} ye dei VP^{1}
    - bu VP bu xing
    - buguan VP^{1} bu VP^{1} ye dei VP$^{1/2}$
    - fei dei VP
    - fei dei VP bu ke
    - jibian/shi bu VP^{1} ye dei VP$^{1/2}$
    - jiushi bu VP^{1} ye dei VP^{1}

yiding dei VP
zongshi bu VP^1 ye dei VP^1

6. NP^1 bu NP^1

buguan ....
ji Neg VP^1 you/ye Neg VP^2
.... meiguanxi
NP^1 fei NP^1, NP^2 fei NP^2
NP^1 Neg EV NP^1
NP^1 ye bu NP^1, NP^2 ye bu NP^2
shifou ....
VP^1 Neg VP^1
.... wusuowei
.... yufou

7. VP/S bu?

VP^1 bu VP^1?

8. cai Aux VP/SVP ne

cai SVP ne
cai Aux VP ne

9. cai EVP/FVP ne

cai EVP ne
cai FVP ne
cai Neg FVP ne
zenme hui/keneng FVP ne

10. NP chuwai

busuan
chule .... yiwai, ...
kaichu
jiangban
tingxue

11. NP dao:"...."

NP shuo:"...."
NP V-dao:"...."

12. V N/Pron de N
13. Topic dou Comment?

Topic dou(shi) Question?
Topic dou(you) Question?

14. Topic *dou* Comment *le*	*dou* VP *jihuo* .... *dou* .... *jiushi* .... *dou* .... *napa* .... *dou* .... *yijing* .... *le*
15. *ge*	*ge* M N *ge* VP *mei* M N Pron *de* N Specifier M N
16. V *ge* X	V *ge* descriptive statement V *ge* negative expression V *ge* quantity statement V *yi* *ge* NP [--VP]
17. *gei* Pron *lai* *ge* VP/S	*gei* Pron V NU M NP
18. Pron^1 *gei* Pron^2 VP	*ni* *gei* *wo* VP! NP^1 *gei* NP^2 VP *wo* *gei* *ni* VP!
19. *gei* VP	*ba* NP *gei* VP *gei* NP VP *jiao/rang* NP *gei* VP
20. *hao* VP	*cai* *neng* VP *lai/qu* VP *lai/qu* *weideshi* .... *cai* ....
21. VP/S *haole*	Phrase *haole*, ... S *ba* S *haole*

22. *jian* X *jiu* Y
    - *dao*/*dengdao*/*zai* VP^1 *de* *shihou*, NP *jiu* VP^2
    - *jian* *le*/*dao*/*zhao* NP/VP^1 *jiu* VP^2
    - *jian* NP/VP *cai*/*zai* VP
    - *meici* *jiandao* NP/VP *jiu* VP
    - *yi* *jian* NP/VP *jiu* VP
    - *yi* VP^1 *jiu* VP^2

23. Aux VP^1 *jiu* VP^1
    - *de* .... *qie* ....
    - *yaoshi* .... *jiu* ....

24. QW Phrase^1 *jiu* QW Phrase^2
    - *yaoshi* ... *jiu* ...

25. VP^1 *jiu* VP^1 *de* *shi*
    - .... *shiyinwei* ....

26. X *jiushi* Y
    - *buguan* .... *jiushi* ....
    - *feiyao* ....
    - *renping* .... *jiushi* ....
    - *siye* ....

27. *lai*
    - *gan*
    - *gao*
    - *nong*
    - *zuo*

28. *lai*, S
    - *hao*, S
    - *nemme*, S

29. V-*lai*/*qu*/*zou*

30. VP-*laizhe*
    - VP *le*
    - VP *ne*
    - VP *zhe*

31. SV-*le* *qu* *le*
    - SV-*jile*
    - *youdeshi*

32. lian NP^1 dai NP^2

NP^1 gen NP^2

33. lian SV^1 dai NP^2

lian SV-de^1 dai SV-de^2

lian SV-N^1 dai SV-N^2

you SV^1 you SV^2 (you)

you SV^1 you SV^2 (you)

34. lian X dai Y

budan VP/S^1 erqie/ye VP^2

you VP^1 you VP^2

35. S-ma./!

bu neng fouren ba!

bu shi ma?

bu shi ye .... ma?

dui bu dui?

ni jrdao de

yinwei .... de yuangu

36. man N^1 shi N^2

hun N^1 shi N^2

man N^1 shi N^2

quan N^1 shi N^2

yi N^1 shi N^2

37. NU SV M N

NU M SV N

38. qie VP ne

hai VP ne

qie VP

VP ne

39. V-shang qian lai/shang qian qu

V-dao N de qianbier lai/qu

V-dao PW lai/qu

V-guolai/qu

V-V-V (Dual Directional Construction)

40. *shi bu shi*

dui bu dui
hao bu hao
xing bu xing

41. *wo shuo* VP/S

wo shuo Q?
wo shuo Q!
wo shuo .... *xing bu xing*!
wo wen Pron Q?

42. VP^1 *ye bai* VP^1

songshi VP^1 *ye bai* VP^1

43. *yi* M^1 M^1

mei M
yi M^1 *yi* M^1

44. *yi* M V

ADV Phrase CO-VP Main VP

45. *yi* V NU M

yi VP^1 *jiu* VP^1 NU M (N)
yixiazi *jiu* V NU M (N)

46. VP *yong*/*shi* *de* N

wei VP *yong*/*shi* *de* N

47. *you* Aux VP/FVP *le*
48. *you* SVP *le*

tai SVP *le*

49. *youde* VP/S

Aux VP
you *ke*-V *de* NP
youde S

50. *youdeshi*

you *de* (NP^1) *shi* NP^2
you *henduo* *de* NP

51. *youxie*

ADV-*xie*

NU-*xie*
Pron-*xie*
QW-*xie*
Specifier-*xie*
SV-*xie*
V-*xie*
youxie NP
youxie SVP
youxie VP

52. *zai ye* Neg VP (*le*)

bu zai VP *le*
jiushi zai VP^1 *ye* Neg VP^2 *le*

53. X *zeyi*, Y

VP/S^1 *zeyi*, *ruo* VP/S^2 *jiu* VP^3
bale
bianba
haole
keyile
meiguanxile
suanle
VP/S^1 *zeyi*, *fouze jiu* VP/S^2
VP/S^1 *zeyi*, *yaoburan jiu* VP/S^2
yaoshi .... *ze* ....
zuihao ...., ... *jiu* ....

54. V^1-*zhe* V^1-*zhe*

V-*zhe*

55. X *zhiyu*, Y

In alphabetical order.

	Structure study number
ADV	
Adverb - Noun Phrase	1
NP ADV NU M (N)	1
ADV Phrase CO-VP Main VP	44
ADV-xie	51
ai	
ai VP^1 bu VP^1	2
ai VP^1 bu VP^1 de	2
Aux	
Aux VP^1 bu VP^1	2
Aux VP^1 keshi bu VP^1	2
bu Aux VP^1 ye dei VP^1	5
cai Aux VP/SVP ne	8
cai Aux VP ne	8
Aux VP^1 jiu VP^1	23
you Aux VP/FVP le	47
Aux VP	49
ba	
X ba, Y	3
jiaru .... ba, ...	3
jihuo .... ba, ...	3
jishi .... ba, ...	3
jiusuan .... ba, ...	3
na .... lai shuo/kan ba, ...	3
ping .... lai shuo/kan ba, ...	3
ruguo .... ba, ...	3
ruoshi .... ba, ...	3
yaoshi .... ba, ...	3
yi .... lai shuo/kan ba, ...	3
S ba	21
bu neng fouren ba!	35

ba
- ba NP gei VP 19

bai
- VP^{1} ye bai VP^{1} 42
- zongshi VP^{1} ye bai VP^{1} 42

bale
- bale 53

bianba
- bianba 53

bu
- ai VP^{1} bu VP^{1} 2
- ai VP^{1} bu VP^{1} de 2
- Aux VP^{1} bu VP^{1} 2
- Aux VP^{1} keshi bu VP^{1} 2
- VP^{1} bu VP^{1} suibian 2
- wulun VP^{1} bu VP^{1} 2
- bu (VP) le 4
- bu zai VP le 4
- bu VP^{1} ye dei VP^{1} 5
- bu Aux VP^{1} ye dei VP^{1} 5
- bu VP bu xing 5
- buguan VP^{1} bu VP^{1} ye dei VP$^{1/2}$ 5
- fei dei VP bu ke 5
- jibian/shi bu VP^{1} ye dei VP$^{1/2}$ 5
- jiushi bu VP^{1} ye dei VP^{1} 5
- zongshi bu VP^{1} ye dei VP^{1} 5
- NP^{1} bu NP^{1} 6
- NP^{1} ye bu VP^{1}, NP^{2} ye bu NP^{2} 6
- VP/S bu? 7
- VP^{1} bu VP^{1}? 7
- bu neng fouren ba! 35
- bu shi ma? 35
- bu shi ye .... ma? 35
- dui bu dui? 35, 40
- shi bu shi 40
- hao bu hao 40
- xing bu xing 40

  - *wo shuo* .... *xing bu xing* 41
  - *bu zai* VP *le* 52

budan
  - *budan* VP/S^{1} *erqie/ye* VP^{2} 34

buguan
  - *buguan* VP^{1} *bu* VP^{1} *ye dei* VP$^{1/2}$ 5
  - *buguan* 6
  - *buguan* .... *jiushi* 26

busuan
  - *busuan* 10

cai
  - *cai* Aux VP *ne* 8
  - *cai* EVP *ne* 9
  - *cai* FVP *ne* 9
  - *cai* Neg FVP *ne* 9
  - *cai* SVP *ne* 8
  - *cai neng* VP 20
  - *weideshi* .... *cai* 20
  - *jian* NP/VP *cai/zai* VP 22

chule
  - *chule* .... *yiwai*, ... 10

chuwai
  - NP *chuwai* 10

CO-VP
  - ADV Phrase CO-VP Main VP 44

Comment
  - Topic *dou* Comment? 13
  - Topic *dou* Comment *le* 14

dai
  - *lian* NP^{1} *dai* NP^{2} 32
  - *lian* SV^{1} *dai* SV^{2} 33
  - *lian* SV-*de*^{1} *dai* SV-*de*^{2} 33
  - *lian* SV-N^{1} *dai* SV-N^{2} 33
  - *lian* X *dai* Y 34

dao
- NP *dao*:"...." 11
- NP V-*dao*:"...." 11
- *dao/dengdao/zai* VP^1 *de shihou*, NP *jiu* VP^2 22
- *jian le/dao/zhao* NP/VP^1 *jiu* VP^2 22
- *meici jiandao* NP/VP^1 *jiu* VP^2 22
- V-*dao* N *de qianbier lai/qu* 39
- V-*dao* PW *lai/qu* 39

de
- *ai* VP^1 *bu* VP^1 *de* 2
- V N/Pron *de* N 12
- Pron *de* N 15
- *dao/dengdao/zai* VP^1 *de shishou*, NP *jiu* VP^2 22
- VP^1 *jiu* VP^1 *de shi* 25
- *lian* SV-*de*^{1} *dai* SV-*de*^{2} 33
- *ni jrdao de* 35
- *yinwei* .... *de yuangu* 35
- *man* N^1 *de* N^2 36
- V-*dao* N *de qianbier lai/qu* 39
- VP *yong/shi de* N 46
- *wei* VP *yong/shi de* N 46
- *you* ke-V *de* NP 49
- *you de* (NP^1) *shi* NP^2 50
- *you henduo de NP* 50

de
- *de* .... *qie* 23

dei
- *bu* VP^1 *ye dei* VP^1 5
- *buguan* VP^1 *bu* VP^1 *ye dei* $VP^{1/2}$ 5
- *fei dei* VP 5
- *fei dei* VP *bu ke* 5
- *jibian/shi bu* VP^1 *ye dei* $VP^{1/2}$ 5
- *jiushi bu* VP^1 *ye dei* VP^1 5
- *yiding dei* VP 5
- *zongshi bu* VP^1 *ye dei* VP^1 5

dengdao
    dao/dengdao/zai VP^1 de shihou, NP jiu VP^2 22
dou
    Topic dou Comment? 13
    Topic dou(shi) Question? 13
    Topic dou(you) Question? 13
    Topic dou Comment le 14
    dou VP 14
    jihuo .... dou ... 14
    jiushi .... dou 14
    napa .... dou 14
dui
    dui bu dui? 35
    dui bu dui 40
EVP
    NP^1 Neg EV NP^1 6
    cai EVP ne 9
ergie
    budan VP/S^1 ergie/ye VP^2 34
fei
    NP^1 fei NP^1, NP^2 fei NP^2 6
feidei
    fei dei VP 5
    fei dei VP bu ke 5
feiyao
    feiyao 26
fouren
    bu neng fouren ba! 35
fouze
    VP/S^1 zeyi, fouze jiu VP/S^2 53
FVP
    cai FVP ne 9
    cai Neg FVP ne 9
    zenme hui/keneng FVP ne 9
    you FVP le 47

gan
  - *gan* 27

gao
  - *gao* 27

ge
  - *ge* M N 15
  - *ge* VP 15
  - V *ge* descriptive statement 16
  - V *ge* negative expression 16
  - V *ge* quantity statement 16
  - V *yi* *ge* NP [--VP] 16
  - *gei* Pron *lai* *ge* VP/S 17

gei
  - *gei* Pron *lai* *ge* VP/S 17
  - *gei* Pron V NU M NP 17
  - *gei* VP 19
  - *gei* NP VP 19
  - *ba* NP *gei* VP 19
  - *jiao*/*rang* NP *gei* VP 19
  - *ni* *gei* *wo* VP! 18
  - NP^1 *gei* NP^2 VP 18
  - *wo* *gei* *ni* VP! 18

gen
  - NP^1 *gen* NP^2 32

guolai
  - V-*guolai*/*qu* 39

hai
  - *hai* VP *ne* 38

hao
  - *hao* VP 20
  - *hao*, S 28
  - *hao* *bu* *hao* 40

haole
  - VP/S *haole* 21
  - Phrase *haole*, ... 21
  - S *haole* 21
  - *haole* 53

henduo

you henduo de NP 50

hui

zenme hui/keneng FVP ne 9

hun

hun N^{1} shi N^{2} 36

ji

ji Neg VP^{1} ,you/ye Neg VP^{2} 6

jibian

jibian/shi bu VP^{1} ye dei VP$^{1/2}$ 5

jihuo

jihuo .... ba, ... 3

jihuo .... dou 14

jile

SV-jile 31

jishi

jishi bu VP^{1} ye dei VP^{1} 5

jiaru

jiaru .... ba, ... 3

jian

jian X jiu Y 22

jian le/dao/zhao NP/VP^{1} jiu VP^{2} 22

jian NP/VP cai/zai VP 22

yi jian NP/VP jiu VP 22

jiangban

jiangban 10

jiao

jiao/rang NP gei VP 19

jiu

dao/dengdao/zai VP^{1} de shihou, NP jiu VP^{2} 22

jian le/dao/zhao NP/VP^{1} jiu VP^{2} 22

meici jiandao NP/VP jiu VP 22

yi jian NP/VP jiu VP 22

yi VP^{1} jiu VP^{2} 22

Aux VP^{1} jiu VP^{1} 23

yaoshi .... jiu 23, 24

QW Phrase^{1} jiu QW Phrase^{2} 24
VP^{1} jiu VP^{1} de shi 25
yi VP^{1} jiu VP^{1} NU M (N) 45
yixiazi jiu V NU M (N) 45
VP/S^{1} zeyi, ruo VP/S^{2} jiu VP^{3} 53
VP/S^{1} zeyi, fouze jiu VP/S^{2} 53
VP/S^{1} zeyi, yaoburan jiu VP/S^{2} 53
zuihao ...., ... jiu 53

jiushi
jiushi bu VP^{1} ye dei VP$^{1/2}$ 5
jiushi .... dou 14
buguan .... jiushi 26
renping .... jiushi 26
jiushi zai VP^{1} ye Neg VP^{2} le 52

jiusuan
jiusuan .... ba, ... 3

jrdao
ni jrdao de 35

kaichu
kaichu 10

kan
na .... lai shuo/kan ba, ... 3
ping .... lai shuo/kan ba, ... 3
yi .... lai shuo/kan ba, ... 3

ke
fei dei VP bu ke 5
you ke-V de NP 49

keneng
zenme hui/keneng FVP ne 9

keshi
Aux VP^{1} keshi bu VP^{1} 2

keyi
keyile 53

lian
- lian NP^1 dai NP^2 32
- lian SV^1 dai SV^2 33
- lian $SV\text{-}de^1$ dai $SV\text{-}de^2$ 33
- lian $SV\text{-}N^1$ dai $SV\text{-}N^2$ 33
- lian X dai Y 34

M
- NP ADV NU M (N) 1
- ge M N 15
- mei M N 15
- Specifier M N 15
- gei Pron V NU M NP 17
- NU SV M N 37
- NU M SV N 37
- yi M^1 M^1 43
- mei M 43
- yi M^1 yi M^1 43
- yi V NU M 45
- yi VP^1 jiu VP^1 NU M (N) 45
- yixiazi jiu V NU M (N) 45

MA
- MA NP VP 1

ma
- S-ma./! 35
- bu shi ma? 35
- bu shi ye .... ma? 35

man
- man N^1 shi N^2 36
- man N^1 de N^2 36

mei
- mei M N 15
- mei M 43

meici
- meici jiandao NP/VP jiu VP 22

meiguanxi
- .... meiguanxi 6
- meiguanxile 53

N
  NP ADV NU M (N) 1
  V N/Pron de N 12
  ge M N 15
  mei M N 15
  Pron de N 15
  Specifier M N 15
  lian SV-N^1 dai SV-N^2 33
  man N^1 shi N^2 36
  hun N^1 shi N^2 36
  man N^1 de N^2 36
  quan N^1 shi N^2 36
  yi N^1 shi N^2 36
  NU SV M N 37
  NU M SV N 37
  yi N V 44
  yi VP^1 jiu VP^1 NU M (N) 45
  yixiazi jiu V NU M (N) 45
  VP yong/shi de N 46
  wei VP yong/shi de N 46
na
  na .... lai shuo/kan ba, ... 3
napa
  napa .... dou 14
ne
  cai Aux VP ne 8
  cai EVP ne 9
  cai FVP ne 9
  cai Neg FVP ne 9
  cai SVP ne 8
  zenme hui/keneng FVP ne 9
  VP ne 30
  qie VP ne 38
  hai VP ne 38
  VP ne 38

Neg
- *ji* Neg VP^1 *you*/*ye* Neg VP^2 6
- NP^1 Neg EV Np^1 6
- VP^1 Neg VP^1 6
- *cai* Neg FVP *ne* 9
- *zai* *ye* Neg VP (*le*) 52

nemme
- *nemme*, S 28

neng
- *cai* *neng* VP 20
- *bu* *neng* *fouren* *ba*! 35

ni
- *ni* *gei* *wo* VP! 18
- *wo* *gei* *ni* VP! 18
- *ni* *jrdao* *de* 35

nong
- *nong* 27

NP
- MA NP VP 1
- NP ADV NU M (N) 1
- NP^1 *bu* NP^1 6
- NP^1 *fei* NP^1, NP^2 *fei* NP^2 6
- NP^1 Neg EV NP^1 6
- NP^1 *ye* *bu* NP^1, NP^2 *ye* *bu* NP^2 6
- NP *chuwai* 10
- NP *dao*:"...." 11
- NP shuo:"...." 11
- NP V-dao:"...." 11
- V *yi* *ge* NP[----VP] 16
- *gei* Pron V NU M NP 17
- NP^1 *gei* NP^2 VP 18
- *ba* NP *gei* VP 19
- *jiao*/*rang* NP *gei* VP 19
- *dao*/*dengdao*/*zai* VP^1 *de* *shihou*, NP *jiu* VP^2 22
- *jian* *le*/*dao*/*zhao* NP/VP^1 *jiu* VP^2 22

jian NP/VP cai/zai VP 22
meici jiandao NP/VP jiu VP 22
yi jian NP/VP jiu VP 22
lian NP^1 dai NP^2 32
NP^1 gen NP^2 32
you ke-V de NP 49
you de (NP^1) shi NP^2 50
you henduo de NP 50
youxie NP 51

NU
NP ADV NU M (N) 1
gei Pron V NU M NP 17
NU SV M N 37
NU M SV N 37
yi V NU M 45
yi VP^1 jiu VP^1 NU M (N) 45
yixiazi jiu V NU M (N) 45
NU-xie 51

ping
ping .... lai shuo/kan ba, ... 3

Phrase
Phrase haole, ... 21
QW $Phrase^1$ jiu QW $Phrase^2$ 24

Pron
V N/Pron de N 12
Pron de N 15
gei Pron lai ge VP/S 17
gei Pron V NU M NP 17
Pron-xie 51

PW
V-dao PW lai/qu 39

qian
V-shang qian lai/shang qian qu 39
V-dao N de qianbier lai/qu 39

- qie
  - de .... qie 23
  - qie VP ne 38
  - qie VP 38
- qu
  - lai/qu VP lai/qu 20
  - V-lai/qu/zou 29
  - SV-le qu le 31
  - V-shang qian lai/shang qian qu 39
  - V-dao N de qianbier lai/qu 39
  - V-dao PW lai/qu 39
  - V-guolai/qu 39
- quan
  - quan N^1 shi N^2 36
- Question(Q)
  - Topic dou(shi) Question? 13
  - Topic dou(you) Question? 13
  - wo shuo Q? 41
  - wo shuo Q! 41
  - wo wen Pron Q? 41
- QW
  - QW Phrase^1 jiu QW Phrase^2 24
  - QW-xie 51
- rang
  - jiao/rang NP gei VP 19
- renping
  - renping .... jiushi 26
- ruguo
  - ruguo .... ba, ... 3
- ruo
  - VP/S^1 zeyi, ruo VP/S^2 jiu VP^3 53
- ruoshi
  - ruoshi .... ba, ... 3

S
- VP/S bu? 7
- gei Pron lai ge VP/S 17
- VP/S haole 21
- S ba 21
- S haole 21
- lai, S 28
- hao, S 28
- nemme, S 28
- budan VP/S^1 erqie/ye VP^2 34
- S-ma./! 35
- wo Shuo VP/S 41
- youde VP/S 49

Shang
- V-shang qian lai/shang qian qu 39

shi
- VP^1 jiu VP^1 de shi 25
- bu shi ma? 35
- bu shi ye .... ma? 35
- man N^1 shi N^2 36
- hun N^1 shi N^2 36
- quan N^1 shi N^2 36
- yi N^1 shi N^2 36
- shi bu shi 40
- VP yong/shi de N 46
- you de (NP^1) shi NP^2 50

shifou
- shifou 6

shihou
- dao/dengdao/zai VP^1 de shihou, NP jiu VP^2 22

shiyinwei
- .... shiyinwei 25

shuo
- na .... lai shuo/kan ba, ... 3
- ping .... lai shuo/kan ba, ... 3

  yi .... lai shuo/kan ba, ... 3
  NP shuo:"...." 11
  wo shuo VP/S 41
  wo shuo Q? 41
  wo shuo Q! 41
  wo shuo .... xing bu xing! 41

si
  si ye 26

Specifier
  Specifier M N 15
  Specifier-xie 51

suanle
  suanle 53

suibian
  VP^1 bu VP^1 suibian 2

SV
  SV-le qu le 31
  SV-jile 31
  lian SV^1 dai SV^2 33
  lian SV-de^1 dai SV-de^2 33
  lian SV-N^1 dai SV-N^2 33
  you SV^1 you SV^2 (you) 33
  you SV^1 you SV^2 (you) 33
  NU SV M N 37
  NU M SV N 37
  SV-xie 51

SVP
  cai SVP ne 8
  tai SVP le 48
  you SVP le 48

tai
  tai SVP le 48

tingxue 10
tingxue

Topic 13
Topic dou Comment? 13
Topic dou(shi) Question? 13
Topic dou(you) Question? 14
Topic dou Comment le

V 11
NP V-dao:"...." 16
V ge X 16
V ge descriptive statement 16
V ge negative expression 16
V ge quantity statement 16
V yi ge NP [--VP] 17
gei Pron V NU M NP 29
V-lai/qu/zou 39
V-shang qian lai/shang qian qu 39
V-dao N de qianbier lai/qu 39
V-dao PW lai/qu 39
V-guolai/qu 39
V-V-'' (Dual Directional Construction) 44
yi N V 45
yi V NU M 45
yixiazi jiu V NU M (N) 49
you ke-V de NP 51
V-xie 54
V^1-zhe V^1-zhe 54
V-zhe

VP 2
ai VP^1 bu VP^1 2
ai VP^1 bu VP^1 de 2
Aux VP^1 bu VP^1 2
Aux VP^1 keshi bu VP^1 2
VP^1 bu VP^1 suibian 2
wulun VP^1 bu VP^1

bu (VP) *le*	4
bu zai VP *le*	4
bu VP^1 *ye dei* VP^1	5
bu Aux VP^1 *ye dei* VP^1	5
bu VP *bu xing*	5
buguan VP^1 *bu* VP^1 *ye dei* VP$^{1/2}$	5
fei dei VP	5
fei dei VP *bu ke*	5
jibian/shi bu VP^1 *ye dei* VP$^{1/2}$	5
jiushi bu VP^1 *ye dei* VP^1	5
yiding dei VP	5
zongshi bu VP^1 *ye dei* VP^1	5
ji Neg VP^1 *you/ye* Neg VP^2	6
VP^1 Neg VP^1	6
dou VP	14
ge VP	15
Pron^1 *gei* Pron^2 VP	18
ni gei wo VP!	18
NP^1 *gei* NP^2 VP	18
wo gei ni VP!	18
gei VP	19
ba NP *gei* VP	19
gei NP VP	19
jiao/rang NP *gei* VP	19
hao VP	20
cai neng VP	20
lai/qu VP *lai/qu*	20
VP/S *haole*	21
dao/dengdao/zai VP^1 *de shihou*, NP *jiu* VP^2	22
jian le/dao/zhao NP/VP^1 *jiu* VP^2	22
jian NP/VP *cai/zai* VP	22
meici jiandao NP/VP *jiu* VP	22
yi jian NP/VP *jiu* VP	22
yi VP^1 *jiu* VP^2	22
Aux VP^1 *jiu* VP^1	23

25
VP^1 jiu VP^1 de shi 30
VP-laizhe 30
VP le 30
VP ne 30
VP zhe 34
budan VP/S^1 erqie/ye VP^2 34
you VP^1 you VP^2 38
qie VP ne 38
hai VP ne 38
qie VP 38
VP ne 42
VP^1 ye bai VP^1 42
zongshi VP^1 ye bai VP^1 44
ADV Phrase CO-VP Main VP 45
yi VP^1 jiu VP^1 NU M (N) 46
VP yong/shi de N 46
wei VP yong/shi de N 47
you Aux VP/FVP le 49
youde VP/D 51
youxie VP 52
zai ye Neg VP (le) 52
bu zai VP le 52
jiúshi zai VP^1 ye Neg VP^2 le 53
VP/S^1 zeyi, ruo VP/S^2 jiu VP^3 53
VP/S^1 zeyi, fouze jiu VP/S^2 53
VP/S^1 zeyi, yaoburan jiu VP/S^2

wei 46
    wei VP yong/shi de N

weideshi 20
    weideshi .... cai ....

wen 41
    wo wen Pron Q?

wo 18
    ni gei wo VP! 18
    wo gei ni VP!

  wo shuo VP/S 41
  wo shuo Q? 41
  wo shuo Q! 41
  wo shuo .... *xing bu xing*! 41
  wo wen Pron Q? 41
wulun
  wulun VP^1 *bu* VP^1 2
wusuowei
  .... *wusuowei* 6
X
  X *ba*, Y 3
  V *ge* X 16
  jian X *jiu* Y 16
  X *jiushi* Y 16
  lian X *dai* Y 34
  X *zeyi*, Y 53
  X *zhiyu*, Y 55
xie
  youxie 51
  ADV-*xie* 51
  NU-*xie* 51
  Pron-*xie* 51
  QW-*xie* 51
  Specifier-*xie* 51
  SV-*xie* 51
  V-*xie* 51
  youxie NP 51
  youxie SVP 51
  youxie VP 51
xing
  bu VP *bu xing* 5
  xing bu xing 40
  wo shuo .... *xing bu xing*! 41

- Y
  - X *ba*, Y 3
  - *jian* X *jiu* Y 16
  - X *jiushi* Y 16
  - *lian* X *dai* Y 34
  - X *zeyi*, Y 53
  - X *zhiyu*, Y 55
- *yaoburan*
  - VP/S^{1} *zeyi*, *yaoburan* *jiu* VP/S^{2} 53
- *yaokan*
  - *yaokan* .... *le* 2
- *yaoshi*
  - *yaoshi* .... *ba*, ... 3
  - *yaoshi* .... *jiu* 23, 24
  - *yaoshi* .... *ze* 53
- *ye*
  - *bu* VP^{1} *ye* *dei* VP^{1} 5
  - *bu* Aux VP^{1} *ye* *dei* VP^{1} 5
  - *buguan* VP^{1} *bu* VP^{1} *ye* *dei* VP$^{1/2}$ 5
  - *jibian/shi* *bu* VP^{1} *ye* *dei* VP$^{1/2}$ 5
  - *jiushi* *bu* VP^{1} *ye* *dei* VP^{1} 5
  - *zongshi* *bu* VP^{1} *ye* *dei* VP^{1} 5
  - *ji* Neg VP^{1} *you/ye* Neg VP^{2} 6
  - NP^{1} *ye* *bu* NP^{1}, NP^{2} *ye* *bu* NP^{2} 6
  - *budan* VP/S^{1} *erqie/ye* VP^{2} 34
  - *bu* *shi* *ye* .... *ma*? 35
  - VP^{1} *ye* *bai* VP^{1} 42
  - *zongshi* VP^{1} *ye* *bai* VP^{1} 42
  - *zai* *ye* Neg VP (*le*) 52
  - *jiushi* *zai* VP^{1} *ye* Neg VP^{2} *le* 52
- *yi*
  - *yi* .... *lai* *shuo/kan* *ba*, ... 3
  - V *yi* *ge* NP[--VP] 16
  - *yi* *jian* NP/VP *jiu* VP 22
  - *yi* VP^{1} *jiu* VP^{2} 22
  - *yi* N^{1} *shi* N^{2} 36

  - yi M^1 M^1 43
  - yi M^1 yi M^1 43
  - yi N V 44
  - yi V NU M 45
  - yi VP^1 jiu VP^1 NU M (N) 45
- yiding
  - yiding dei VP 5
- yijing
  - yijing .... le 14
- yiwai
  - chule .... yiwai, ... 10
- yixiazi
  - yixiazi jiu V NU M (N) 45
- yinwei
  - yinwei .... de yuangu 35
- yong
  - VP yong/shi de N 46
  - wei VP yong/shi de N 46
- you
  - you SV^1 you SV^2 33
  - you ke-V de NP 49
  - you de (NP^1) shi NP^2 50
  - you henduo de NP 50
- you
  - ji Neg VP^1 you/ye Neg VP^2 6
  - you SV^1 you SV^2 33
  - you VP^1 you VP^2 34
  - you Aux VP/FVP le 47
  - you SVP le 48
- youde
  - youde S 49
- youdeshi
  - youdeshi 31, 50

- youxie 51
  - youxie NP 51
  - youxie SVP 51
  - youxie VP
- yufou 6
  - .... yufou
- yuangu 35
  - yinwei .... de yuangu
- zai 4
  - bu zai VP le 22
  - jian NP/VP cai/zai VP 22
  - dao/dengdao/zai VP^1 de shihou, NP jiu VP^2 52
  - zai ye Neg VP (le) 52
  - bu zai VP le 52
  - jiushi zai VP^1 ye Neg VP^2 le
- ze 53
  - yaoshi .... ze ....
- zeyi 53
  - X zeyi, Y 53
  - VP/S^1 zeyi, ruo VP/S^2 jiu VP^3 53
  - VP/S^1 zeyi, fouze jiu VP/S^2
- zenme 9
  - zenme hui/keneng FVP ne
- zhao 22
  - jian le/dao/zhao NP/VP^1 jiu VP^2
- zhe 30
  - VP zhe 54
  - V^1-zhe V^1-zhe 54
  - V-zhe
- zhiyu 55
  - X zhiyu, Y
- zongshi 5
  - zongshi bu VP^1 ye dei VP^1 42
  - zongshi VP^1 ye bai VP^1
- zuihao 53
  - zuihao ...., ... jiu ....